



ISSN 2573-5616 (print)
ISSN 2573-5624 (online)

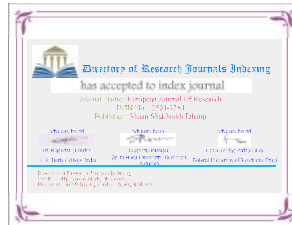
IMPACT FACTOR: 5.069

AMERICAN JOURNAL OF RESEARCH

№ 3-4, March-April 2019

Social Science and Humanities

USA, Michigan



AMERICAN JOURNAL OF RESEARCH

Founder and publisher Robert Hart

Published since January 2017 year. Issued Monthly.

Editorial office: Mailing address: 8223 Lakeshore Rd., Lexington, Michigan 48450, USA Phone: +1 348-498-3736

Internet address: <http://www.journalofresearch.us>

E-mail: info@journalofresearch.us

Circulation 200 copies. Free of charge. IMPACT FACTOR: 5.069

Chief in Editor	Robert Hart	Country: USA, Michigan Area: (social science and humanities) E-mail: info@journalofresearch.us
-----------------	--------------------	---

Editorial board

Professor in National University of Cordoba in Argentina	Sebastian Viqueira	Specialization: Social science and Humanities Country: Argentina
--	---------------------------	---

Assistant professor in Faculty of security-Skopje	Marjan Gjurovski	Specialization: Social science and Humanities Country: Macedonia
---	-------------------------	---

Doctor of science, professor	J. Edward Halcomb	Specialization: Social science and Humanities Country: USA
------------------------------	--------------------------	---

Professor in Eötvös Loránd University	Judit Kozma	Specialization: Social science and Humanities Country: Budapest, Hungary
---------------------------------------	--------------------	---

Professor in Criminology at the Faculty of Criminal Justice and Security University of Maribor	Gozard Mesko	Specialization: Social science and Humanities Country: Slovenia
--	---------------------	--

Assistant professor	Dave Haddad	Specialization: Social science, arts Country: USA
---------------------	--------------------	--

Professor in University of Utrecht	Dina Siegel	Specialization: Social science Country: Netherlands
------------------------------------	--------------------	--

Assistant professor in Faculty of Law, University of Zagreb	Aleksandar Marsavelski	Specialization: Social science and Humanities Country: Croatia
---	-------------------------------	---

Doctor of science	Mihails Gernousovs	Specialization: Social science and Humanities Country: Latvia
-------------------	---------------------------	--



1. Dr. Rubee Singh, Archana Raj, Ankita Pratap, HIGHER EDUCATION SECTOR IN INDIA: CHALLENGES OF SUSTAINABILITY.....	4
2. Sobia Naseem, Muhammad Mohsin, Shazia Salamat IMPACT OF THE INFLATION RATE, CURRENT BALANCE ON PAKISTAN GDP.....	17
3. Tajiev Aziz HADITH USING METHODOLOGY IN THE EARLY RELIGIOUS-POLITICAL SECTS IN ISLAM.....	21
4. Dr Hana A. Ali Mohamed INTERCULTURAL INTERACTIVE PROCESSING MODEL OF READING ENGLISH AS A FOREIGN LANGUAGE SHORT FICTION IN THE LIBYAN CONTEXT.....	31
5. Fisayo Fagbemi, Toyin Joseph Olufolahan CAPITAL INFLOWS, FINANCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND POVERTY REDUCTION IN NIGERIA.....	53
6. Chi Daojia THE CONTRASTIVE ANALYSIS OF MODERN CHINESE AND UZBEK CONSONANTS.....	79
7. Aduralere Opeyemi, OYELADE DETERMINANTS OF CRIME IN NIGERIA FROM ECONOMIC AND SOCIOECONOMIC PERSPECTIVES: A MACRO-LEVEL ANALYSIS.....	88
8. Musaeva Feruza SATIRE FOR REACTIONARY MODE IN THE STORY BY A.P.CHEKHOV "THE MAN IN THE CASE".....	106
9. Wilson Mugizi HUMAN RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT PRACTICES AND ORGANISATIONAL COMMITMENT OF TEACHERS IN GOVERNMENT AIDED SECONDARY SCHOOLS IN WAKISO DISTRICT, UGANDA.....	109
Turayev Ulugbek, Nurov Dilmurod, Isayeva Laylo, Barnayeva Munira, Shorofutdinov Humoyun, Sharopov Nurmuhammad, Ibrohimova Kumush. IMPROVEMENT OF LAND-RECLAMATION STATUS BY WATERING PHYTOMELIORATIVE PLANTS AND SAVING WATER RESOURCES.....	128
11. Davletov Jamshid CONCEPT "EVERY FAMILY IS AN ENTREPRENEUR" AND INNOVATIVE IDEAS IN IT (SOCIAL AND PHILOSOPHICAL ANALYSIS).....	137
12. Khayriya Burieva TOPONYMS OF TASHKENT AS A FACTOR OF REFLECTION OF HISTORICAL PROCESSES (1917 - 1980).....	143
13. Indira Mirzamukhamedova OLIGARCH CRIME AND ILLEGAL SEIZURES AS THE PERPETRATOR AND THE TOOL OF CRIMINAL BANKRUPTCIES IN THE REPUBLIC OF KAZAKHSTAN.....	152
14. Dr. Chander Bhushan Nagar, Dr. Barnali Bhowmick. LANGUAGE AND CROSS BORDER FREE TRADE: AN INTERDISCIPLINARY APPROACH.....	160
15. Massreshaw Assnakew Abebe. SOLID WASTE TRANSPORTATION PRACTICE AND CHALLENGE OF ADDIS ABABA CITY.....	169
16. Oybek Sadikjanovich Kasimov. TASHKENT EXCHANGE OF CUSTOMER DESIGN AND LANDSCAPE DESIGN.....	182
17. Eng. Fadi T. Alasafeh. THE ROLE OF BIOCHIPS IN MEDICAL INSTRUMENTATION: TERMINOLOGY AND COMPONENTS.....	188
18. Ulugmuradova Nodira Berdimurodovna. THE MECHANISM OF REGULATION OF INNOVATIVE FORMS OF SOCIAL AND LABOR RELATIONS IN THE INNOVATION ECONOMY.....	192
19. Zakaria Sharadgah MD, Mayada Migdadi MD, Mustafa Al-Haji MD, Hala Sweidan MD, Sondos Alharahsheh MD. PICKY EATER CHILDS, TERMINOLOGY AND HANDLING CASES.....	202
20. Eng. Aktham Ali Al-Omar. THE ROLE OF SPIROMETER IN EARLY DIAGNOSIS OF COPD.....	207
21. Ilkhom Juraev. THE FUNCTIONAL-SEMANTIC AND TRANSLATING PECULIARITIES OF "AS SOON AS" INCHOATIVE PHASEME.....	212
22. Abduazimov Sabirjon. PLACE OF PHYSICAL CULTURE IN THE COMBAT TRAINING OF PERSONNEL.....	216
23. Kenjaev A.L. THE ROMANTIC POEM OF A.S. PUSHKIN "BAKHCHYSARAY FONTAIN" IN THE UZBEK LANGUAGE.....	220
24. Manal A. Alsharaya. CONTRIBUTION OF CHEMICAL ENGINEERING IN THE HEALTHCARE FIELD.....	223

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 12, 2018., Accepted March 17, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**HIGHER EDUCATION SECTOR IN INDIA:
CHALLENGES OF SUSTAINABILITY**

Dr. Rubee Singh 1st

Assistant Professor in Human Resource

Department of Management (MBA),

Email- dr.rubeerajput@gmail.com

RBMI Group of Institutions, Gr. Noida India,

Archana Raj 2nd

Assistant Professor in Finance & HOD

Department of Management & Commerce

Email- raj.archana14@gmail.com

RBMI Group of Institutions, Gr. Noida India,

Ankita Pratap 3rd

Assistant Professor in Human Resource

Department of Management (MBA)

Email- mail.ankitapratap@gmail.com

G.L Bajaj ITM, Gr.Noida India



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-1>

Abstract: Higher education is a powerful tool to build knowledge based society for any country. With growing size of higher education in field of management and technical courses, it has become utmost important to build a efficient database on higher education. Higher education has witnessed tremendous changes in education system. This is the right time to build excellent system in field of education and research. India needs more efficient and educated people to drive our economy forward. There are many Indian around the corner who known for their capabilities and skills. When India can provide skilled people to other countries then why not India must progress from developing to developed country. This paper is mainly focused on the overall performance of higher education system in India. We try to find out the initiatives taken by the government to raise level of education system. This paper also highlighted some problems and prospects of Indian higher education. Finally the paper discussed here is need of plans requires for combine employers and youth need of Expectations of from various stakeholders Students, Industry, Educational Institutions, Parents and Government.

Key words: Gross Enrollment Ratio (G.E.R), Human Resource, Quality Education.

Recommended citation: Dr. Rubee Singh, Archana Raj, Ankita Pratap. HIGHER EDUCATION SECTOR IN INDIA: CHALLENGES OF SUSTAINABILITY. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 4-16 (2019).

INTRODUCTION

Change at the scale we will see in the next ten years in education in India is unprecedented in human history - Prof Pankaj Chandra, Director IIM, Bangalore.

Higher Education provides opportunities to the people to reflect on the critical social, cultural, moral, economic and spiritual issues facing humanity. Higher education provides specialized knowledge and skilled persons for national development. Higher education being the highest point of education provides quality researchers, teachers and professors for better education system. In next few decades, India will have world's largest set of young people. While the correlation between people and higher education is not up to the mark. The increasing youth population can be a great asset if potential employability is brought to fruition. Conversely, if we fail to provide education and employment then it will open a downside gate for Indian economy.

Quality education is mandatory for economic growth. Higher education system adds value to the human resource and provides leaders in all fields like management, business, politics.

Administration etc. Importance of higher education is unavoidable for developing countries like India. Higher education system has witnessed significant expansion in last few years, both in terms of the number of institutions and colleges as well as the student enrollment in

various courses. India has more than 600 universities and over 30,000 colleges with 285.63 million students till end of 2013.

Some Indian institutes, such as Indian Institutes of Technology (IITs) and Indian Institute of Management (IIMs), have been globally recognized for their education standards. The IITs enroll near about 8000 students annually and pass out students contributed to both the growth of the private sector and the public sectors of India. However no Indian University or college is known for world class education like Cambridge and Harvard. According to the London Times Higher Education (2009)-Quacquarelli Symonds (QS) World University rankings - There was no Indian university in Top 100 universities but many other Asian Universities were included . Hong Kong has three universities in top 100, ranked at 24, 35 and 46; Singapore has two ranked at 30 and 73; South Korea also have two ranked at 47 and 69 and Taiwan one in the 95th position. China also managed to get two universities ranked at 49 and 52. There is no Indian Institute till 200. Only the IIT, Kanpur and Madras and Delhi University got rank 237, 284 and 291 respectively.

Shanghai University conducted a research on universities and institutes all over the world. Its research shows that there is no single indian university in top 300 universities while China has six universities. The first institute to

make its appearance in top 400 is the Indian Institute of Science, Bangalore. The IIT, Khargpur is also counted in top 500. India also has some fine universities but besides that we also have many universities those are established only for making money. Many universities in India are running their own courses without affiliation or recognition. Students from semi-urban and rural areas often fall prey to these institutes and colleges. UGC and other Regulatory authorities have been trying very hard to extirpate the menace of private universities but till now they didn't succeed.

In 21st century, Knowledge is power. The more knowledge power one has, the more empowered one is. According to the University Grants Commission (UGC), India needs more than 1500 universities with adequate facilities by the end of the year 2015 in order to compete in the global market. India lacks the critical mass in higher education. Its GER (gross enrolment ratio) is a mere 11 per cent as compared to China's 20 per cent, the USA has 83 per cent and South Korea's is 91 per cent. If we conclude this GER then China has double the number of students pursuing higher education than India.

The higher education scenario of India does not match with the global education quality standards. Hence, there is enough justification for an increased assessment of the Quality of the country's educational institutions. Traditionally, these institutions or universities assumed

that education quality could be determined by their internal resources, viz., experienced faculty with an impressive set of degrees, good and impressive records for broacher, number of books and journals in the library, an ultra-modern and advance campus with WIFI, and size of the endowment, etc., or by its definable and assessable outputs, viz., highly satisfied and employable graduates, efficient use of resources, producing uniquely educated students. The governmental committees and many independent academicians have highlighted the crisis confronting the education system: ' increasing unrest and indiscipline on the campuses; increasing educated unemployment; weakening of student motivation; frequent collapse of administration; deterioration of standards; and above all, the demoralizing effect of the irrelevance and purposelessness of most of what is being done.' While the policy makers and authorities have often spoken about the need for radical reconstruction of the education system, what has been achieved in reality is only moderate reformism.

The universities of institutes with world class facilities in India are limited. Most of our Indian institutes, colleges and universities lack in providing high-end research facilities. Lack of the grants and money issued in education sector makes it very difficult to provide top quality facilities or engage in cutting-edge research. This gap has to be bridged if we want to speed

up our path toward development. The University Grant Commission of India is not only the lone grant giving agency in India, but also responsible for coordinating, directing, determining and maintaining the standards in institutions of higher education.

OBJECTIVES

To analyze the current scenario of higher education system in India

To identify the key issues faced by higher education system

ACCREDITATION OF ACADEMIC INSTITUTIONS

There are two primary accreditation bodies involved in the accreditation of academics programs.

AICTE (All India Council for Technical Education) has established a board National Accreditation Board (NAB). NAB was set up to conduct evaluation of Technical Institutions on the basis of guidelines, Standards and Norms specified by AICTE and to give details to AICTE or to the Commission or to the other bodies, regarding recognition or de-recognition of the institution or college. AICTE is the only one authorized body for approving technical programs.

Except of UGC there are other regulatory bodies like AICTE, Bar council, Medical Council etc. Below is the full composition of all those bodies which runs complete education system in India.

	Formal Education	Technical Professional And Education	Skill Development	Vocational Training
Composition	Universities Colleges Polytechnics Institute of national importance	Engineering colleges Management school Law, Medical, Pharmacy etc.	ITs ITCs Private skill development centers	Finishing schools English Training Air hostess training
Key Regulators	UGC State Government IGNOU	AICTE Bar Council of India ICAI Medical Council of India	DGET for ITIs & ITCs Unregulated for others	No Regulator
Accreditation Bodies	NAAC	NBA	None	None
Key Players	IITs IIMs SRCC	Universities Colleges	ITIs ITCs Private Centers	VETA Frankfimm

NAAC (The National Assessment and Accreditation Council) is an autonomous body, which was established by the University Grants Commission (UGC) of India to assess and accredit institutions/colleges/universities of higher education in the country. It was set up on recommendations of the National Policy in Education (1986)

that laid special emphasis on upholding the quality of higher education in India.

Many educational regulatory bodies like UGC, All India Council for Technical Education (AICTE), Bar Council of India (BCI), Distance Education Council (DEC), Dentist Council of India (DCI), Indian Council for

Agriculture Research (ICAR), National Council for Teacher Education (NCTE) Rehabilitation Council of India (RCI), Medical Council of India (MCI), Pharmacy Council of India (PCI), Indian Nursing Council (INC), Central Council of Homeopathy (CCH), the Central Council of Indian Medicine (CCIM) and such other regulatory bodies are trying to cope up with the growing population and rapidly changing trends. It is time for all those who are concerned with policymaking, planning, adminis-

tration and implementation of Higher Education to revitalize the very thinking on the subject and put it on the right track.

HIGHER EDUCATION - STATISTICAL OVERVIEW

At the end of 2013, there were 642 government-recognized Universities and 34908 colleges in India. But still we need more than 1500 universities to cater the demand. According to all india survey on higher education India has 642 colleges at the end of 2013.

No. of Institutions/Enrollment	2010-11	2011-12
Universities	621	642 (up to dec.2013)
Colleges	32974	34908
Enrolment (in Lakhs)	275.00	285.63
Enrolment in Distance mode (In lakhs)	33.14	35.60

The above statistics shows that our education system is improving not only in number of colleges and universities but also in enrollment. There were 32974 colleges in 2010-11 and this figure increased to 34908 in 2011-12. The enrollment figure in distance education programme also shows positive signs. Most of these universities have affiliated

colleges where undergraduate courses are approved and taught. But still, if we compare this improving stat with increasing population, then we have to rethink, is it still improving.

If we talk about the Gross Enrolment Ratio (GER) in higher education then we will find positive increase. Below statistic support this.

	2010-11	2011-12
Male	20.8	21.6
Female	17.9	18.9
Total	19.4	20.4

However gross enrolment ration increased over past few years but still it is not satisfactory. Gross enrolment Ratio has increased to 20.4 in 2011- 12 from 19.4 in 2010-

11 showing growth of 5.15 percentage point during that period. It may be seen that GER for male population is marginally higher which clearly indicates that women

is also pursuing higher education and posing a challenge to male dominated society which is overall a healthy sign for Indian society.

In India categorization or distribution of colleges and universities is also not balance. As shown in the below figure most of the share is occupied by the Un-Aid private colleges. After that aided colleges are very less near to 14%. Even than the most of the colleges runs only undergraduates programme specially the private colleges. The data in below Graphical representation show that highest numbers of student are enrolled at under graduate level followed by post graduate and diploma.

In higher education in India, about 79 per cent of students enrolled at undergraduate level and only about 11.8 per cent are enrolled at post graduate level. Surprisingly, diploma and certificate courses has a meagre 1 per cent enrolment as it is considered as an available provision for those who are not able to make it in the mainstream higher education. Unfortunately, for a nation aspiring to become a knowledge economy, a trivial 1 per cent enrolment in research study would not be praiseworthy (UGC, 2012).

It has been observed that the share of enrolment in traditional courses viz., humanities, social sciences and pure/natural sciences has declined during the last one decade and the same trend is likely to continue in near future. The inclination for professional courses and thereby

enhanced enrolment is favoured by increased private providers and other stakeholders, who anticipate better job prospects. This is likely to hamper the basic research output. The contribution of India in research publication has increased during last one decade but compared to its contemporary developing nations its growth has not been appreciable (DST,

2012). Further the Distance education accounts for 26 per cent of the total students' enrolments and the remaining 74 per cent is the share of classroom teaching in higher education (FICCI, 2011). Figure 1 shows a more detailed bifurcation of the faculty-wise enrolments.

BUDGET ANALYSIS 2013-14

The budget of 2013-14 proposes a fund outflow of Rs 65,867 crore for education, against Rs.

61,427 crore in 2012-13. If we compare then there is only 17% increase from the current fiscal's estimates against 18% hike in the budget spending that was last year and 24 % in the year 2011-12.

The Department of Higher Education has been allocated Rs. 16,210 crore against Rs. 13,479 last year with increase of 20.26%. This amount is also includes provision for various higher and technical institutions.

UGC has been allocated Rs 5,769.00 crore, which is inclusive of allocation for Central

Universities and Deemed Universities.

For the "National Mission for Education through ICT", has been provided Rs. 400.00 crore has been made.

IGNOU, which has been in the forefront of distance education mode, has made a provision of Rs.125.00 crore

For technical education, There is a provision of Rs. 7,299 crore . It includes assistance to IITs, NITs, IIMs, etc. Out of this, Rs. 1,300.00 crore for NITs, Rs. 2,400.00 crore for IITs and Rs. 350.00 crore for IIMs - this allocation is including new ones. Indian Institutes of Science Education and Research (including IIS, Bangalore) has been provided Rs. 859.50 crore. Apart from the provisions for various ongoing schemes in the Technical Education sector, a provision of Rs. 700 crore has been provided for Polytechnics in the States.

CHALLENGES & ISSUES

Since independence we are facing challenges to establish a good and strong education system. Various governments tried to establish new and effective education policies in the system but they were not sufficient for our country. Still Indians are facing lot of problems in our Education System. Indian government recognizes that the new global scenario poses unrivalled challenges for the higher education system. The UGC stated that a whole range of skills will be demanded from the graduates of commerce, humanities, natural sciences and social science,

as well as from the various professional disciplines such as hospitality, tourism, agriculture, law, management, medicine or engineering.

There are many basic problems faced by higher education system in India. These include inadequate infrastructure and facilities, vacant seats in academic field and poor faculty thereof, low student enrolment rate, out dated and old teaching methods, declining research standards, unmotivated students, overcrowded and small classrooms and widespread geographic, income, gender, and ethnic imbalances. Apart from these concerns relating to deteriorating standards and lack of facilities, there is reported exploitation of rural area students by many private education providers.

The demand-supply gap: India has a very low rate of enrolment in higher education (18%) as compared China (26%) and 36% in Brazil. There is huge demand-supply gap. By 2020, the Indian government aims to achieve 30% gross enrolment in higher education, which mean providing 40 million university places with an increase of 14 million in six years.

Inadequate facilities and infrastructure: In India, many of the universities don't have adequate infrastructure or facilities to teach students. Even many private universities are running courses without classrooms. Internet and Wi-Fi facility is still out of reach of many students.

Lower level of teaching quality: Our education system is torture by issues of quality in many of its institutions and universities. Many of the issues like shortage of faculty, poor quality teaching, Traditional teaching methods, outdated and rigid curricula and pedagogy, lack of accountability and quality assurance and separation of research and teaching are raising questions on Indian education system. Research constraints: India has a very low level of PhD enrolment. India does not have enough high quality researchers. In Indian education system there is a lack of early stage research experience; a weak ecosystem for creativity and innovation, and low levels of industry engagement.

Uneven growth and access to opportunity: In India, access to higher education is uneven in enrolment across population groups and geographies. This uneven growth of higher education is major challenge for India. India has the largest number of out-of-school students in the world, more than the whole of sub-Saharan Africa, and also 69% of India's population still lives on less than 2 dollar per day. The World Bank categorises India as "an extreme dual economy".

More concentrated on theories and rather than practical knowledge: Indian education system is more focused on theoretical knowledge rather than practical knowledge. In many jobs there is also a minimum requirement of percentage which is high.

Lack of involvement in and control of educational matters by

Professors: Most of the professors or higher authorities do not like to take part in education related activities. They stick to their own growth.

Traditional methods of teaching: Professors still stick to those old methods of teaching like board, marker. They don't like to use audio visual aids in teaching. Also they are not up to date with the information available and what global industry demands.

Abroad settlement after education: Many students after doing IITs and IIM try to search opportunities in foreign countries like Australia, USA, and Canada etc. They look forward for MNCs and get settled abroad. There must be a fix criteria that students after higher education have serve his country first.

Quota system: Bringing the reservation and quota system for different categories in education lost its quality. Even deserving candidates of general categories are ignored and on quota we have to select other person from reserved category even though he is not suitable.

Quality - Reflecting on: National Assessment and Accreditation Council gave a report in which the concern was over the fact that two thirds (68%) of the country's universities and 90% of its colleges are "of middling or poor quality" and that well over half of the teaching faculty in India's colleges does not have the appropriate degree qualifications.

India can no longer continue with these issues. Rather, it requires major investment in disciplines of tourism, humanities, social sciences, natural sciences and commerce and provides them adequate field based experience to enhance knowledge with skills and develop appropriate attitudes

SUGGESTION AND RECOMMENDATION

The syllabus or curriculum for higher education is outdated in most cases. Its syllabus contain matters that the world has moved on with. To compete with global education, you need the curriculum to be progressive in nature. Students need to be given choices for enrolment in multiple courses and allowed to choose their favorite after 1st or 2nd semester. The syllabus must contain more practical applications than the theoretical part. The curriculum must not be exams driven, it must be industry driven. Exams should be complimented with incentives for innovation and creative works. Students should have choice to switch to another stream if they justify some basic criteria. But in switching stream like from engineering to commerce, it would be difficult so for that you need young and dynamic faculty.

The next issue pops up in the curriculum board, in most cases board is filled with older people above 60's or 70's. I strongly recommend that these boards must have young professors and teachers to have a mix of experience and youth

in system. The younger ones are more updated with the technological changes and the new age needs of the students.

The quality teachers are also hard to find out, who only works for the sake of the education. The fact is that most of the younger professors are doing jobs because they have nothing better to do. The point is very simple; they are paid much less in comparison with rest. A graduated student earns more in corporate world than what a lecturer or an Assistant Professor earn. Despite the 6th pay commission the salary in teaching is much less to attract quality faculty. Once you start paying worth the caliber, you get the people who actually want to teach.

This might sound like a ridiculous suggestion but if you think about it, it might make some sense. We all know that private colleges and many universities make money and they are run as large businesses and even build up educational organisation. The solution, I feel is that make them competitive. Make them under direct competition rather than indirect. Let them fight out openly rather than doing so under the carpet. Education has become a business in some form, the more we hide behind it, and the more corruption would step in. If Educational institutes/colleges are using this business to improve their education system, then let them do it, that's how world class universities work and that's how we should work if we follow the colonial system. The best way forward is to make them

for profit, taxable and it would increase capital for them and revenue for government as well as increase transparency for us.

The interaction of industry players with the educational system can improve the level of education. Industries could play a major role in changing the current education system.

Companies should be seeking out for such interactions, if they don't agree to it, then the universities should use their advantage. When companies or industry players come for placements, there should be basic qualification criteria for their eligibility for the placements. Companies must be asking to donate money for university research and development. Most of the companies would fall in line automatically since for them human capital is much more important than these meager sums of money. Many companies are giving lakhs to recruiting agencies than why wouldn't they give this money to universities.

One of the most underrated potentials is the power of the Alumni in Indian education system. Barring the IIT's and few other top institutes, the concept of Alumni networking is nonexistent or not used by the many institutions. Graduated alumni are earning somewhere, alumni networks need to be very well intertwined with the university affairs. Alumni are very eager to give assistance to their institutions. Once you establish a credible network which is transparent, it would give the avenue

as well as the confidence for the alumni to contribute in terms of money or academic expertise. Above points are just few suggestions to tackle issues faced by Indian higher education system.

In brief stop spending money on non performing institutions and universities. Reduce spending on non valuable projects, which don't have future implications. There must be some minimum guideline, which must be followed by each institute. Provide opportunities to rural students in form of scholarships, hostels, fellowship and transportation.

CONCLUSION

After independence, there has been tremendous increase in higher education institutions of learning in all disciplines. But still India is way behind in providing world class education. Today, India is one of the fastest growing countries of the world with the annual growth rate going above 9%. In order to sustain that rate of growth, there is need to increase the number of institutes with quality education. To achieve and reach the future requirements there is an urgent need to relook at the Financial Resources, Education Policies, Access and Equity, Quality Standards, Relevance and at the end the Responsiveness.

To attain and sustain international quality, certain components are particularly relevant. There must be careful selection of staff and continuous staff development, in particular through the promotion of

appropriate programs for academic development, including learning methodology or teaching. We must focus on mobility between countries, between higher education institutions and the world of work, as well as student mobility within and between countries. So that they can learn about working environment. Internal self-evaluation and external review must be conducted openly and periodically by independent specialists, if possible with international experts.

If we are talk about India, we are providing skilled and educated people to world. Why we are unable to utilize their potential to covert our country from developing to developed country. We must create some parameters, to indulge educated people for driving our

economy forward. We are moving towards an era which would be defined by the parameters of knowledge.

We need an educational system that is modern/advanced, liberal and can adapt to the changing demands of a changing society, a changing economy and a changing global world. Indian higher education system and regulatory bodies must identify the key issues and quickly make policies to remove those hurdles. Only one or two universities can't make much difference. If the government welcomes such initiatives which drive our education system forward, then future will be ours. We will be able to match and compete with other countries and the dream to be the world's greatest economy won't be difficult to achieve.

REFERENCES

- Agarwal R et al. Higher Education and Quality Improvement: A challenge for India. Indian Journal of Applied Research 2014; 4(10).
- Arunachalam P. Higher Education Sector in India: Issues and Imperatives. Journal of Global Econom 2010; 6(4).
- Bhatia K, Dash MK. National Knowledge Commission-A Step towards India's Higher Education Reforms on India's Higher Education. International Research Journal of Finance and Economic 2010; 53: 46.
- Dukkipati U. Higher Education in India: Sustaining Long-term Growth. Center for Strategic Studies and International Studies, Washington D.C. 2010. Retrieved from http://csis.org/files/publication/sam_141.pdf
- Joshi K, Vijay K. Indian Higher Education: Some Reflections. Journal of Intellectual Economics 2013; 7(15): 42-53.
- Kharas H. The Emerging Middle Class in Developing Countries. OECD Development Centre, 2013; 285. Retrieved from <http://www.oecd.org/dev/44457738.pdf>
- Narayan J. Reforming Higher Education in India, 2005. Retrieved from <http://ap.loksatta.org/documents/advocacy/highedu.pdf>
- Ramesh G. Indian Higher Education and the Challenges of Sustainability: An Analytical Note. International Journal of Social Science & Interdisciplinary Research 2013; 2(9).

Suresha R, Mylarappa B. Development of Indian Higher Education in the 21st Century. *International Journal of Social Science & Interdisciplinary Research* 2012; 1(10).

British council report. *Understanding India: The future of higher education and opportunities for international cooperation*, 2014.

Department of School Education and Literacy Department of Higher Education, Ministry of Human Resource Development, Government of India-Annual Report 2013-14.

Earnest and Young report (2012). *Higher Education in India: Twelfth Five Year Plan (2012-2017) and beyond*.

FICCI Report. *Higher Education in India: Vision 2030*. 2013. Retrived from [http://www.ey.com/Publication/vwLUAssets/Higher-education-in-India-Vision-2030/\\$FILE/EY-Higher-education-in-India-Vision-2030.pdf](http://www.ey.com/Publication/vwLUAssets/Higher-education-in-India-Vision-2030/$FILE/EY-Higher-education-in-India-Vision-2030.pdf)

International Labour Organisation report. *Estimates and projections of the economically active population 2011; 1990-2020*.

Indian National Science Academy (INSA) New Delhi and Indian Academy of Sciences, Bangalore (2012); *Recommendations to the Planning Commission for the XI Five Year Plan. Higher Education in Science and Research & Development: The Challenges and the Road Ahead.*

KPMG-Edge forum report. *Indian Higher Education - The defining years, 2012*.

Ministry of Human Resource Development, Government of India (2011-12 provisional). *All India Survey on Higher Education*.

Ministry of labour and employment govt of India. *National policy on skills development*, 2009. Retrieved from <http://labour.nic.in/content/innerpage/skill-development.php>

Sitra Report. *The Higher Education and Research in India: an Overview*, 2007. Retrieved from <http://www.sitra.fi/julkaisut/raportti74.pdf>

Planning commission government of India, *Twelfth five-year plan; 2012-17*.

UGC Report. *Higher Education in India; Issues Related to Expansion, Inclusiveness, Quality and Finance*, 2008.

Interim Budget 2019, & PIB report

Barnett, R. (1992). *Improving Higher Education: Total Quality Core*, Buckingham: SRHE&OU.

Agarwal, P. (2006). "Higher Education in India: The Need for Change." *ICRIER Working Paper*, Indian Council for Research on International Economic Relations: No. 180.

PWC report on "India-Higher education system: Opportunities for Private Participation", 2012.

Sanat Kaul, "Higher Education in India: seizing the opportunity", Working paper no. 179, 2006

British Council, *Understanding India: The Future of higher education and opportunities for international cooperation*, 2014.

Websites: <http://pib.nic.in/newsite/efeatures.aspx?relid=122741>

<http://ictpost.com/process-and-politics-ict-governance-in-indian-education/>

<http://thenamopatrika.com/smriti-irani-launches-new-schemes/>

ants Commission. 2013-14. (pp. 50 - 78). 2013-14

Hemali Chhapia (2013), IITs will take nearly 10 years to get to ideal teacher-student ratio. [Online] Available: <http://timesofindia>.

indiatimes.com/home/education/news/IITs-will-take-nearly-10-years-to-get-to-ideal-teacher-student-ratio/articleshow/22670998.cms (September 18, 2013)

Chiranjib Sen (2011). *A Framework for Analyzing Demand and Supply of Faculty and the Quality of Higher Education*, IIM Bangalore, Working Paper No. 350, 1 - 34.

Grace G. (1991). *The state and the teachers: problems in teacher supply, retention and morale*, Evaluation and Research in Education, 1 & 2, 3 - 16. Bowen, H.R.,

Schuster, J.H. (1986). *American professors: A national resource imperilled*. New York: Oxford University Press. Braskamp, L.A. Ory,

J.C. (1994). *Assessing Faculty Work: Enhancing Individual and Institutional Performance*. San Francisco:

Jossey-Bass. Richardson, R., Watt, H. (2005). I've decided to become a teacher: Influences on career change. *Teaching and Teacher Education: An International Journal of Research and Studies*, 21, 5, 475 - 489. Doron, R., Braunstein,

A. (1991). Preference of Teaching versus Engineering Careers among Technical Education Graduates (Teacher Education). *IEEE Xplore. Electrotechnical Conference Proceedings 6th Mediterranean*, 2, 1514 - 1517.

Gokuldas, V.K. (2010). Factors that influence first-career choice of undergraduate engineers in software services companies, A South Indian experience. *Career Development International. Emerald Group Publishing Ltd.*, 15, 2, 144-165.

Shehnaz Tehseen, Noor Ul Hadi (2015). Factors Influencing Teachers' Performance and Retention. *Mediterranean Journal of Social Sciences*, 6, No. 1, 33

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 15, 2018., Accepted March 18, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

IMPACT OF THE INFLATION RATE, CURRENT BALANCE ON PAKISTAN GDP

Sobia Naseem¹, Muhammad Mohsin², Shazia Salamat³

1. Department of Optimization and Decision Making,

Liaoning Technical University, China

Sobiasalamat4@gmail.com

2. College of Business Administration,

Liaoning Technical University, China

mohsin.5050@yahoo.com

3. College of Business Administration,

Liaoning Technical University, China Shaziameher08@gmail.com



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-2>

Abstract: The main objective of this paper is to examine the relationship between inflation, Current balance, and GDP of Pakistan. Annual time series data for the period 1980 to 2017 is used in this study. The OLS method is used to find out the result. The empirical result shows that inflation rate is significant at 10% level of significance, but the current balance account at 5% level of significance but the coefficients of both independent variables are negative which shows that there is an inverse relationship between dependent and independent variables.

Key words: Inflation, GDP, OLS.

Recommended citation: Sobia Naseem, Muhammad Mohsin, Shazia Salamat. IMPACT OF THE INFLATION RATE, CURRENT BALANCE ON PAKISTAN GDP. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 17-20 (2019).

Introduction

GDP (Gross domestic product) is an important indicator to check the economy of a country. The GDP of Pakistan in 2017 around was 304.95 billion U.S dollars. In this study, we have reviewed the impact of some important economic variables on Pakistan's GDP.

Similarly, this study is aimed at finding the effects of some macroeconomic factors like

inflation, interest rate and real exchange rate on Pakistan's GDP and finding its steps and measures. The government of Pakistan considering these factors can be taken by the Government of India to promote economic development (GDP). Previous studies were supported in this regard. Blejer (2000) and Naseem et al., (2018) found that if a country has high inflation in an economy that country

faced many difficulties to run the policies easily. Due to high inflation, there is always a relationship with the change in the rising price, which can lead Investment plans are not sure about being profitable in the future. It leads to more Orthodox will say otherwise with the investment decisions. This, finally, Leads to lower levels of investment and economic growth. Infection may also affect. The balance of the economy is relatively expensive in its exports. Other than that, talk to the tax system to disturb inflation and bankruptcy decisions. Firms had to allocate more resources to deal with inflation. Sweidan (2004) found that weak negative correlation is between GDP and inflation rate. Munir et al., (2009) found that the relationship between inflation rate and GDP is non-linear in the case of Malaysia. Kemal et al., (2006) conclude that an increase in the money supply becomes to create the inflation thus verifies that's quantity theory of money. Hansen (2000) they look for an inflation value for Malaysia and confirm that the relationship between inflation and economic growth is nonlinear. The estimated threshold regression model estimated that 3.89 percent compared to the interval approach of Infrastructure, in which inflation significantly damages the actual GDP development rate. Also, with the level below the threshold, figures of growth between inflation and growth have a significant positive relationship.

Objectives of the Study

The major objective of the present study is to examine the impact of inflation on GDP growth in Pakistan.

Data and methodology

In this study to find the relationship between GDP, Inflation rate and Current balance account secondary data is used. In a past study many research work on this topic. So annually data is used in this study for the period 1980-2017. The data of these variables are collected from the World development indicator and State bank of Pakistan. To check the relationship between GDP growth-inflation rate and current balance regression technique were used as (Mohsin et al., 2018). The multiple regression models are used to find out the impact of the inflation rate and the current balance on GDB growth.

$$Y = \alpha + \beta_1 IN + \beta_2 CB + e$$

Y= is dependent variable (GDB growth)

IN= independent variable (inflation rate)

CB= independent variable (current balance)

a=consent

e= error term

Result

Table#1 Descriptive statistics

	GDP	IN	CB
Mean	4.820386	8.605235	-2.701586
Median	4.832817	8.837937	-2.74153
Std. Dev.	2.189203	3.937775	2.527608
Skewness	0.296471	0.562481	0.201004
Kurtosis	2.639573	3.541903	4.459111
Jarque-Bera	0.662045	2.143894	3.149596
Probability	0.718189	0.342341	0.207049
Observations	33	33	33

H0= data is normally distributed

H1= Data is not normally distributed

In the above table shows that the mean value of GDP is 4.82, IN 8.60 and CB is -2.70 and the skewness of all variables are positive. The Jaraque-Bera test is insignificant which means that the data are normally distributed.

Table#2 Regression analysis

Ordinary Least Squares Method				
Sample: 1 33				
Dependent Variable: Y				
Included observations: 33				
Variable	Coefficient	Std. Error	t-Statistic	Prob.
C	5.29103	0.86412	6.123028	0.000
IN	-0.17519	0.093969	-1.864351	0.0721***
CB	-0.383816	0.146394	-2.621798	0.0136**
Adjusted R-squared	0.162455	S.D. dependent variable		2.189203
F-statistic	4.103456	Durbin-Watson statistics		1.123089
Prob(F-statistic)	0.026588			

, **, * which mean that's significant at 1%, 5% and 10% respectability*

In the above table shows the result of ordinary least square (OLS) to find the relationship between GDP, IN, and CB. The variable IN (inflation rate) is statistically significant at 10% level, but the sign of the coefficient is a negative mean

inverse relation between GDP and Inflation rate and the variable CB (current balance) are significant at 5% level, but the sign of the coefficient is negative same as the inflation rate coefficient. The F-statistics is significant at 5% level shows that the model is a good fit.

Conclusion

Trade is soberly significant to Pakistan economy the sum of import and export is 25% of GDP. In this study analyzed the relationship between GDP, Inflation and current balance account. The empirical result shows that inflation is significant at 10% level, and current balance account significant at 5% level but the sign of both independent variables are negative which mean shows the inverse relation with GDP. This study will be help to domestic, foreign investor as well as a policymaker.

References:

Aizenman, J., Chinn, M. D., & Ito, H. (2010). The Emerging Global Financial Architecture: Tracing And Evaluating New Patterns Of The Trilemma Configuration. *Journal Of International Money And Finance*, 615-641.

Blejer, M. (2000) Inflation Targeting in Practice: Strategic and operational issues and application to emerging market economies. *International Monetary Fund*.

Bouraooui, T., & Phisuthtiwatcharavong, A. (2015). On The Determinants Of The THB/USD Exchange Rate. *Procedia Economics And Finance* , 137 - 145.

Hasan, A. et al. (1995). What explains the Current High Rates of Inflation in Pakistan. *The Pakistan Development Review*, 34(4), 927-943.

Kemal, M.A. (2006). Is Inflation in Pakistan a Monetary Phenomenon? *The Pakistan Development Review*, 45(2), 213-220.

Kumar, R., & Dhawan, R. (1991). Exchange Rate Volatility And Pakistan's Exports To The Developed World, 1974-85. Elsevier, 1225-1240.

Munir, Q. et al. (2009). Inflation and Economic Growth in Malaysia: A Threshold Regression Approach, *ASEAN Economic Bulletin*, 26(2), 180-193.

Mohsin, M., Majeed, M. K., & Naseem, S. (2018). Impact Of Gdp, Unemployment And Current Balance On Exchange Rate: A Study From Pakistan. *American Journal Of Research*, 37-46.

Mohsin, M., Majeed, M. K., & Naseem, S. (2018). Impact Of Inflation Rate And Exchange Rate On Gdp: Evidence From Pakistan. *American Journal Of Research*, 25-30.

Naseem, S., Fu, G. L., Mohsin, M., Baig, S., & Zia-Ur-Rehman, M. (2018). The Volatility Of Pakistan Stock Market: A Comparison Of Garch Type Models With Five Distribution. *Revista Amazonia Investiga*, 486-504.

Sweidan, O. D. (2004). Does Inflation Harm Economic Growth in Jordan? An Econometric Analysis for the Period 1970-2000. *International Journal of Applied Econometrics and Quantitative Studies*, 1(2), 41-66.

Senadza, B., & Diaba, D. D. (2017). Effect Of Exchange Rate Volatility On Trade In Sub-Saharan Africa. *Journal Of African Trade*, 20-36.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 19, 2018., Accepted March 13, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**HADITH USING METHODOLOGY IN THE EARLY
RELIGIOUS-POLITICAL SECTS IN ISLAM**

Tajiev Aziz Shavkatovich

Researcher of the International Islamic Academy of Uzbekistan
Tashkent, Uzbekistan



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-3>

Abstract: This article is devoted to historical roots of the emergence of the early religious-political sects in Islam dates back to the first century of Hijra. During the reign of the caliph Ali ibn Abu Talib (35/656-40/661), the first division into sects was occurred among Muslims. Due to the battle Siffin in 37/657 for the throne of the caliphate between Ali and Muawiya ibn Abu Sufyan (40/661-60/680), the early religious-political sects - the Kharijites and Shiites were emerged.

Key words: sect, Kharijites, Shia, muhaddith, the science of hadith, caliph, imamate, fabricated hadith, interpretation.

Recommended citation: Tajiev Aziz Shavkatovich. HADITH USING METHODOLOGY IN THE EARLY RELIGIOUS-POLITICAL SECTS IN ISLAM. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 21-30 (2019).

Historical roots of the emergence of the early religious-political sects in Islam dates back to the first century of Hijra. During the reign of the caliph Ali ibn Abu Talib (35/656-40/661), the first division into sects was occurred among Muslims. Due to the battle Siffin in 37/657 for the throne of the caliphate between Ali and Muawiya ibn Abu Sufyan (40/661-60/680), the early religious-political sects - the Kharijites and Shiites were emerged.

Disagreement between these sects was mainly in the matter of a caliph. The term "caliph" (خليفة) is an Arabic

word, and it means "deputy" and "successor" [1]. The plural of the term "caliph" is "Khulafa" (خلفاء).

The early disagreement was occurred among Muslims in the matter of voting a caliph and even some groups of people incorrectly interpreted this matter because of the Prophet (PBUH) has not left an exact instruction that who should be a caliph after himself. Nevertheless, all Muslims that belonged to Ahl al-Sunna wal-Jama'a further have hold the moderate way tightly and have kept the following hadith in this matter.

The early disagreement was occurred among Muslims in the matter of voting a caliph and even some groups of people incorrectly interpreted this matter because of the Prophet (PBUH) has not left an exact instruction that who should be a caliph after himself. Nevertheless, all Muslims that belonged to Ahl al-Sunna wal-Jama'a further have hold the moderate way tightly and have kept the following hadith in this matter.

إِنَّ هَذَا التَّمَرَّ فِي فُرَيْشٍ لَا يُعَادِيهِمْ أَحَدٌ إِلَّا كَتَبَهُ اللَّهُ عَلَىٰ وَجْهِهِ مَا أَقَامُوا الدِّينَ

“Authority of ruling will remain with Quraish, and whoever bears hostility to them, Allah will destroy him as long as they abide by the laws of the religion” [2, 436-437].

According to this hadith, Muslims have reached a consensus (اجماع) that a person who would be voted as a caliph to guarantee the execution of the rules of Shari'a (Islamic law) as well as to rule Muslims in the religious and worldly matters must be from the tribe of Quraish. In addition, it must be met some conditions in voting a caliph that he must be fair, voted by the council of Muslims, and be sworn an oath by Muslims. Sources show that swearing an oath in the period of the companions of the Prophet (PBUH) was on basis of the companions' free opinion and submission to a caliph was also an optional matter, but after the Umayyad dynasty came to the throne, swearing an oath and submission to a caliph was changed into a compulsory duty [3, 79].

Nevertheless, the above mentioned sects had special views in this matter. The Kharijites [4] (الخوراج), considering themselves as real Muslims and having a very ruthless attitude against those who had not accepted their ideas and had not followed them, fought against Muawiya on Ali's side firstly. They made Ali to accept tahkim [5] (تحكيم) despite of his resistance, then accusing all the companions of unbelieving, separated from Muslims with a slogan لَا حُكْمَ إِلَّا لِلَّهِ (judgement is only for Allah). They fought against Ali and Muawiya at the same time.

The Kharijites have used Qur'an and hadiths in order to prove that they were in the right path as well as to ground their false views on Muslim belief as the other religious-political and theological sects have done. For it, The Kharijites have accepted the external meaning of hadiths, interpreting their real meaning incorrectly and fabricating false hadiths. The beginning of the process of fabricating false hadiths by some people and groups were observed for the first time in the period of Usman ibn Affan (23/644-35/656) and it was at the peak of the development when many false hadiths were fabricated by the theological sects emerged in the end of the 1/7th century as well as by heretics and tale narrators.

The Kharijites have developed a political view that anybody would be voted as a caliph firstly, then they have developed some special theological views as well. Blaming Ali, Usman, Amr ibn Os, Musa Ash`ari, Aisha, Talha, Zubair, and all those who have been agreed with tahkim as well as those Muslims who have committed big sins as unbelievers, allowing themselves to kill other Muslims and to rob their goods, rebelling against rulers for insignificant reasons, denying torture in the grave are peculiar characters to the teaching of this sect [6, 936-937].

Hadiths are considered as one of the main sources in the teaching of the Kharijites. The fact that the Kharijites have used hadiths for grounding their theological views proves the above mentioned opinion. We can notice that the Kharijites have presented some hadiths as a proof for their view on the matter of a caliph. For example, they have used the following hadiths in this respect.

لَا فَضْلَ لِعَرَبِيٍّ عَلَى عَجَمِيٍّ وَلَا لِعَجَمِيٍّ عَلَى عَرَبِيٍّ وَلَا أَحْمَرَ عَلَى أَسْوَدَ وَلَا أَسْوَدَ عَلَى أَحْمَرَ
إِلَّا بِالْقَوِيِّ

“An arabian is preferable to a foreigner, a foreigner to an arabian, red to black, and black to red only in piety” [7, 474].

عَنْ جَنَّتِيهِ أُمِّ الْحُصَيْنِ قَالَتْ سَمِعْتُ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ يَقُولُ إِنْ أَمَرَ عَلَيْكُمْ عَبْدٌ
حَبَشِيٌّ مُجَدَّحٌ فَاسْمَعُوا لَهُ وَأَطِيعُوا مَا قَادَكُمْ بِكِتَابِ اللَّهِ

“It was narrated from Umm Husain that she heard the Prophet (PBUH) say: “Even if the one appointed over you is a mutilated Ethiopian slave whose nose and ears have been cut off, listen to him and obey, so long as he leads you according to the Book of Allah” [8, 101].

However, muslim scholars say that these hadiths have an another meaning in fact. In particular, a muslim scholar Ali Muhammad Sallabi has confirmed that the first hadith means that people are preferable to each other only in piety, but they are all equal in other things [9, 56]. According to the teaching of Ahl al-Sunna wa al-Jama`a, one is required to meet the above mentioned requirements besides qualities such as piety, justice and humanity in order to be voted as a caliph. The most important aspect in it is that a candidate must be from the tribe Quraish.

Muslim scholars' opinion on the second proof of the Kharijites is that there are a lot of hadiths about the necessity of obeying and listening to an Ethiopian slave leader. Nevertheless, even the decision of these hadiths do not cancel the requirement that a caliph must be from the tribe Quraish. As Sallabi confirms, these hadiths of this sort are narrations are a bit of an exaggeration that narrated to emphasize the necessity of obeying and listening to rulers [9, 55].

In addition, the Kharijites have blamed those Muslims who had committed big sins as unbelievers and have claimed that they would stay in the hell eternally. They have used the 81st verse of Surah Baqarah to prove their wrong view:

بَلَىٰ مَنْ كَسَبَ سَيِّئَةً وَأَحَاطَتْ بِهِ خَطِيئَتُهُ فَأُولَٰئِكَ أَصْحَابُ النَّارِ هُمْ فِيهَا خَالِدُونَ

“Yes, whoever earns evil and his sin has encompassed him – those are the companions of the Fire; they will abide therein eternally” [10, 12].

The Kharijites have given this verse as proof of that those Muslims who had committed sins would be abide in the Hell eternally. According to the teaching of the Kharijites, whoever dies committing a sin will not be worthy of Allah’s mercy. In addition, it cause him to lose his faith. The Kharijites have used the above mentioned verse from Qur’an as a proof for their wrong view on it and interpreted it incorrectly because all hadiths from the Prophet (PBUH) definitely condemn the act of blaming others as unbelievers.

Nevertheless, the Kharijites have used some hadiths as a proof besides the above mentioned verses of Qur’an. However, they have not understood the real meaning of these hadiths when they have used them and that is why they have given another meaning to them. For example, one of them is narrated by Abu Huraira and it can be an example for our opinion.

عَنْ أَبِي هُرَيْرَةَ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ قَالَ قَالَ النَّبِيُّ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ لَا يَزْنِي الزَّانِي حِينَ يَزْنِي وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ وَلَا يَشْرَبُ الْخَمْرَ حِينَ يَشْرَبُ وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ وَلَا يَسْرِقُ حِينَ يَسْرِقُ وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ وَلَا يَنْتَهَبُ نَهْبَةَ يَرْفَعُ النَّاسُ إِلَيْهِ فِيمَا أَبْصَارُهُمْ حِينَ يَنْتَهَبُهَا وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ

“Narrated Abu Huraira: The Prophet (PBUH) said: “When an adulterer commits illegal sexual intercourse, then he is not a believer at the time he is committing it, and when a drinker of an alcoholic liquor drinks it, then he is not a believer at the time of drinking it, and when a thief steals, then he is not a believer at the time of stealing, and when a robber robs, and the people look at him, then he is not a believer at the time of committing robbery” [11, 380].

However, the Kharijites have concluded wrongly that one would be an unbeliever committing the acts mentioned in the hadith. In fact, it was emphasized in sources that this hadith was narrated on the people who commit these sins considering them legally [12, 284]. One of Muslim scholars Ahmad ibn Ali ibn Hajar Asqalani (773/1371-852/1448) interpreted this hadith and confirmed that Muslim had not become an unbeliever by committing sins mentioned in it [13].

In fact, the Kharijites have used fabricated hadiths for grounding their views very rarely. There is information in sources that they have never tried to fabricate false hadiths. Nevertheless, some sources mention that they have used fabricated hadiths as well.

For example, a Muslim scholar Muhammad Muhammad Abu Zahv says that Jamaluddin Abulfaraj Abdurahman Ali ibn Javzi (510/1116-597/1201) gives ibn Lakhi`a's following opinion in the introduction of his work "Kitab al-Mavzu`at" (A book of fabricated hadiths): "I heard that one of the Kharijites had regretted and left his wrong path. He said: "Hadith is a religion. Look at one from whom you take your religion. When we wanted to do something, we used to convert it into a hadith" [14, 87]. Another Muslim scholar Abdurahman ibn Mahdi (135/752-198/813) said that the Kharijites and heretics had fabricated the hadith "If a hadith from me comes to you, compare it with Qur'an. If it corresponds to Qur'an, then it will be mine" [15, 99].

However, some scholars deny the fact that the Kharijites have fabricated false hadiths and say that they were not busy with this matter. In particular, one of them, Mustafa Siba`i emphasize that the Kharijites have abstained from fabricating false hadiths taking the fact into account that according to the teaching of the Kharijites committing big sins and telling a lie is a cause of becoming an unbeliever [15, 99]. In addition, a Muslim scholar Abu Zakariya Yahya ibn Main Baghdadi (159/775-233/847) denies that the Kharijites have fabricated false hadiths and says that heretics themselves have fabricated the above mentioned false hadiths [15, 100].

The information given above shows that the Kharijites almost have not used the method of fabricating false hadiths in the propaganda of their teaching. Some characters of the Kharijites make us to come to this conclusion. Firstly, telling a lie is considered as a sign of disbelief according to the teaching of the Kharijites and this reason has not allowed them to fabricate false hadiths. Secondly, the Kharijites were mainly people who were bedouins, naturally ignorant and brutal and that is why they were not ready to use the same method of the fight against their ideological opponents which was used by other sects for grounding their teaching. Thirdly, they preferred the method of fighting with a sword to the method of the ideological struggle. So, the main means used by the Kharijites in the struggles against opponents was a sword. In addition, according to them, nothing can not wash faults of the "unbelievers" who have committed big sins off except a sword.

Nevertheless, there are some specific characters in the hadith using methods used by the Kharijites. For example, they have blamed the companions of the Prophet (PBUH) as unbelievers after they had agreed with tahkim and have denied their narrations.

However, this specific aspect in the acceptance of the hadiths was not peculiar to the all sects of the Kharijites. In particular, hadith books, written by the representatives of the sect Ibadiya [16] (الإباضية) which was more orthodox among the other sects of the Kharijites and existed in our days as well, show that they have accepted narrations from Ali ibn Abu Talib, Usman ibn Affan, Aishah, Abu Huraira, Anas ibn Malik and others [17, 23].

In addition, there were not literate people among those who have followed the teaching of the Kharijites at that time. Because literate people have understood that the teaching of the Kharijites was contradictory to the pure teaching of Islam and the narrations of the Prophet (PBUH). As Muhammad Abu Zahv confirms, even there were not pupils of the scholars of the companions such as Abdullah ibn Mas'ud, Umar ibn Khattab, Ali ibn Abu Talib, Aishah, Muaz ibn Jabal among the Kharijites [14, 85]. It caused the Kharijites to take only the external meanings of verses and hadiths, to interpret their real meaning wrongly, to blame other Muslims and even each other as unbelievers for insignificant reasons. Generally, the policy carried out by the Umayyads and Abbasides against the Kharijites on the one hand, and internal wars among the Kharijites themselves, blaming each other for different faults, especially for unbelief on the other hand caused the Kharijites almost to perish in the second half of the 2/8th century.

If we analyze the hadith using methods of the different sects, it is found out that some of these sects have accepted the external meaning of hadiths and some of them have interpreted hadiths for their views. Nevertheless, Muslim scholars have various opinions on the method that used by Kharijites for this purpose. According to the scholars such as Ahmad Amin and Abu Zahra, the Kharijites have accepted the external sides of hadiths leaving their real meaning. According to the scholars such as ibn Abbas, the Kharijites have interpreted hadiths wrongly for grounding their views [18, 278-279].

The study of the history of the sects in Islam shows that some sects have not accepted ohod hadiths. However, the Kharijites have accepted both mutawatir and ohod hadiths as a proof of the religion. The books written by the representatives of the Kharijites on Usul al-Fiqh [19] (اصول الفقه) show that they have used ohod hadiths in making decisions. In particular, one of these authors Salimi says: "There are different opinions on the acceptance of ohod hadith and qiyas. Which one is preferable to an another one? Our followers, Mutakallims and Faqihs prefer ohod hadith to qiyas. That is why the observance of ohod hadith is better than the observance of qiyas" [17, 23].

Another religious-political sect that emerged in the early period of Islam and still existed in our days is Shia [20] (الشيعة). According to Shia teaching, imamat is considered as one of the pillars of Islam, and the faith of Muslim, who does not believe in it, will not be perfect, and his good deeds will not be accepted. The Shiites consider Ali ibn Abu Talib as a legal caliph. Also they consider the caliphs before Ali as illegal rulers because they have taken the throne from him by force according to the teaching of Shia. That is why the Shiites condemn the rulers before Ali as well as the Umayyad caliphs, and they consider that imamat is Ali's legal right and it must be limited only to his descendants.

As it was said above, the issue of imamat is the most important aspect of the shiite theological teaching and it caused to emerge disagreement between the Shiites and Ahl al-Sunna wa al-Jama'a. The Shiites use some hadiths as a proof for grounding their view on imamat. For example, they use the following hadiths for grounding their view on that Ali is the Prophet's legal deputy.

عَنْ أَبِي سَرِيحَةَ أَوْ زَيْدِ بْنِ أَرْقَمَ شَكََّ شُعْبَةَ عَنِ النَّبِيِّ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ مَنْ كُنْتُ مَوْلَاهُ
فَعَلِيٌّ مَوْلَاهُ

“Abu Sarihah, or Zaid ibn Arqam - Shu`ba had doubt – narrated, from the Prophet (PBUH): “For whomever I am his Mawla then Ali is his Mawala” [21, 387].

عَنْ عَلِيٍّ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ أَنَا دَارُ الْحِكْمَةِ وَعَلِيٌّ بَابُهَا

“Ali narrated that the Messenger of Allah (PBUH) said: “I am the house of wisdom, and Ali is its door” [21, 394].

عَنْ مُصْعَبِ بْنِ سَعْدٍ عَنْ أَبِيهِ أَنَّ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ خَرَجَ إِلَى ثُبُوكَ وَاسْتَخْلَفَ عَلِيًّا فَقَالَ ائْخُلْفَنِي فِي الصَّبْيَانِ وَالنِّسَاءِ فَإِنَّا لَأَنْرَضِي أَنْ تَكُونَ مِنِّي بِمَنْزِلَةِ هَارُونَ مِنْ مُوسَى إِذَا أَنَّهُ لَيْسَ نَبِيٌّ بَعْدِي

“Narrated Sa'd: Allah's Messenger (PBUH) set out for Tabuk appointing Ali as his deputy. Ali said: “Do you want to leave me with the children and women?”. The Prophet (PBUH) said: “Will you not be pleased that you will be to me like Harun to Musa? But there will be no Prophet after me” [22, 424].

In fact, imamat was turned into one of the most important theological issue in Shia. Even they consider that the belief in imam is a part of the belief in Allah. In particular, Sabit ibn Abu Safiya ibn Dinar [23] (died 150/767) said about it: “Ja`far said me: “Whoever knows Allah will pray to Him. Whoever does not know Allah his prayer will be an error”. I asked him: “May my life be a victim for you! How do we know Allah?”. He answered: “We know Allah confirming Allah, the Messenger and Ali and accepting imamat of Ali and other imams” [12, 360].

The Shiites, who believe in that the caliphate is Ali's legal right and the Umayyads have taken this right from him by force, have started to fabricate false hadiths since the second half of the 1/7th century for grounding their views. Their purpose in fabricating false hadiths was to praise the virtues of Ali and his descendants as well as to prove that the caliphate was their legal right. That is why hadiths, in which the virtues of Ali and his descendants were praised, were started to be fabricated. A muslim scholar Jalaluddin Abdurahman Suyuti (died 299/911), who studied these fabricated false hadiths, has a special chapter named as "Manaqib Ahl Bait" (The virtues of Ahl Bait) dedicated to them in his work "al-Lali`u al-Masnu`a fi al-Ahadith al-Mavzu`a" (A Pearl Made on the Fabricated Hadiths) and collected the fabricated false hadiths on the virtues of Ahl Bait in it [24].

In addition, the Shiites have fabricated false hadiths about Muaviya and the Umayyads, and we can see a proof of it in the books of the false hadiths. For example, they have fabricated the following hadiths: "Whoever dies with hatred against Ali ibn Abu Talib in his soul, then he dies as a jew and christian", "There will be an intrigue. If any of you will be a witness of this intrigue, then hold two things tightly. These are Allah's Book and Ali ibn Abu Talib. Ali is my deputy after me" [14, 93].

A Muslim scholar Ibn Javzi has divided the Shiites into the three groups based on their method of fabricating false hadiths in his work "Kitab al-Mavzu`at" (The Book of the Fabricated Hadiths). The Shiites of the first group take the hadith that existed in fact and remove any phrase from it they like or add any phrase into it they like. The Shiites of the second group fabricate the hadith, which is not existed in fact, and narrate this hadith saying "Ja`far said so", "Someone said so". The Shiites of the third group are ignorant people and they fabricate any hadith they like [25, 338]. The hadiths, which were fabricated by the Shiites for grounding their wrong view that Ali was a prophet, were collected in the special chapter named as "Bab fi Fadhal Ali Alayhissalam" (The Chapter of Ali's (PBUH) virtues) of the above mentioned book [25].

As it is seen in the history, the ideas of Abdullah ibn Saba`, who had spread various intrigues in the history of Islam, has caused the wrong views that Ali was a prophet or he had a divine power to be developed among the Shiites. He has spread the intrigues about the resurrection of Muhammad (PBUH) firstly, and then that Ali ibn Abu Talib was a prophet or had a divine power among Muslims. Of course, there were those who have accepted these wrong views, but they were newly embraced into Islam and have not abandoned their former belief totally. According to sources, the followers of Abdullan ibn Saba` came to Ali and said: "Are You that person?". Ali said: "Who is that?". They said: "Are You God?". Then Ali ordered to kill them by throwing into the fire [26, 214].

As conclusion it may be said that the early religious-political sects that emerged in Islam have used the verses of Qur'an and hadiths, and have interpreted their real meaning wrongly for grounding their false view, even have fabricated the false hadiths in this way much times notwithstanding they they have mainly use the philosophical proofs for grounding their views. Of course, these sects have not followed the rules of giving proofs set by Muslim scholars and have used various narrations, false hadiths and myths which were not existed in fact. They have developed the special methods of using hadiths for grounding their wrong views and have not followed the method of the companions of the Prophet (PBUH), successors and Muslim scholars in the interpretation of the verses and hadiths, but they have used any method they like.

References:

1. Girgas F.V. Arabsko-russkiy slovar k Koranu i hadisam. - Moscow: "Dilya", 2006. - 230 p.
2. Muhammad ibn Ismail Bukhari. Sahih Bukhari. - Riyadh: Maktaba Dar al-Salam, 1997. V.4.
3. Muhammad Abu Zahra. Tarikh al-Mazahib al-Islamiya fil-Siyasa wal-Aqaid wa Tarikh al-Mazahib al-Fiqhiya. - Cairo: Dar al-Fikr al-Arabi, 2009.
4. Kharijites - from an Arabic word "kharaja" (???) and means "rebels" and "separators".
5. Tahkim - from an Arabic word "hakkama" (???) and means to appoint a judge. Appointing a judge by Ali and Muawiya to carry on negotiations was called as an event of tahkim in the history of Islam.
6. Ahmad ibn Abdulaziz Husain. Mavsua Maza Ta`rifu `anil Firaq wal-Mazahib. - Riyadh: Dar Alam al-Kutub, 2007.
7. Ahmad ibn Hanbal. Musnad al-Imam Ahmad ibn Hanbal. - Beirut: Muassasa al-Risala, 2001. V.38.
8. Muhammad ibn Yazid ibn Maja Qazvini. Sunan ibn Maja. - Riyadh: Maktaba Dar as-Salom, 2007. V.4.
9. Ali Muhammad Sallabi. Fikr al-Khawarij wa al-Shia fi Mizan Ahl al-Sunna wa al-Jama`a. - Cairo: Dar ibn Jazm, 2008.
10. The Translation and Interpretation of the Meanings of Qur'an / translated and interpreted by Abdulaziz Mansur. - Tashkent: Tashkent Islamic University, 2018.
11. Muhammad ibn Ismail Bukhari. Sahih Bukhari. - Riyadh: Maktaba Dar al-Salam, 1997. V.3.
12. Ghalib ibn Ali Ivaji. Firaqun Mu`asiratun Tantasibu ila al-Islam wa Bayan Mavqif al-Islam minha. - Jiddah: al-Maktaba al-Asriya al-Zahabiya, 2001.
13. Ahmad ibn Ali ibn Hajar Asqalani. Fath al-Bari Bisharhi Sahih al-Bukhari. - Riyadh: Dar Tayyiba, 2005. V.15. - 512 p.
14. Muhammad Muhammad Abu Zahv. Al-Hadith wa al-Muhaddithuna. - Riyadh, 1984. - 87 p.
15. Mustafa Siba`i. al-Sunna wa Makanatuha fi al-Tashri al-Islami. - Beirut: Dar al-Varraq, 2000.

16. Ibadīya - one of the sects of the Kharijites, it was named after its founder Abdullah ibn Ibad (died 89/708).
17. Muhammad Mustafa A`zami. *Dirasatun fi al-Hadith al-Nabawi wa Tarikh Tadwinihi*. - Beirut: al-Maktab al-Islami, 1980.
18. Ghalib ibn Ali Ivaji. *Firaqun Mu`asiratun Tantasibu ila al-Islam wa Bayan Mavqif al-Islam minha*. - Jiddah: al-Maktaba al-asriya al-zahabiya, 2001.
19. Usul al-Fiqh - a theoretical field of Islamic law that studies the sources of making decisions.
20. Shia - an Arabic word and means "follower" and "adherent".
21. Abu Isa Muhammad ibn Isa Tirmizi. *Jame` al-Tirmizi*. - Riyadh: Maktaba Dar al-Salom, 2007. V.6.
22. Abu Abdullah Muhammad ibn Ismail Bukhari. *Sahih al-Bukhari*. - Riyadh: Maktaba Dar al-Salom, 1997. V.5.
23. He was born in Kufa and famous as a Shiite scholar, mufassir and muhaddith under the nickname of Abu Hamza. He was an author of the books such as "al-Nawadir", "al-Zuhd", "Tafsir Abi Hamza".
24. See: Jalaluddin Abdurahman Suyuti. *al-Lali`u al-Masnu`a fi al-Ahadith al-Mavzu`a*. - Beirut: Dar al-Ma`rifa, 1975.
25. Abulfaraj Abdurahman ibn Ali ibn Javzi. *Kitab al-Mavzu`at*. - Medina: Maktaba al-Salafiya, 1966. - 338 p.
26. Abulqadir Shaibatul Hamd. *Al-Adyan wa al-Firaq wa al-Mazahib al-Muasira*. - Riyadh: Maktaba Fahd al-Wataniya, 2012. - 214 p.
27. John A. Haywood. *Divine Word and Prophetic Word in Early Islam-a Reconsideration of the Sources, with Special Reference to the Divine Saying of Had?th quds? // Religion, Volume 11, Issue 2, April 1981. - 196 p.*

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 19, 2018., Accepted March 13, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**INTERCULTURAL INTERACTIVE PROCESSING
MODEL OF READING ENGLISH AS A FOREIGN
LANGUAGE SHORT FICTION IN THE LIBYAN
CONTEXT**

Dr Hana A. Ali Mohamed

P HD University of Aberdeen, United Kingdom
Lecturer, Benghazi University



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-4>

Abstract: Using literary texts in the classroom has been widely practiced in the field of EFL teaching and learning. Many scholars ascertain that English literary texts provide language learners with a kind of authentic language used by native speakers in real contexts. Research studies in the EFL field illustrate that EFL learners' problems in reading English literary texts are due to two main reasons. Firstly, the complex structure of literary texts. Secondly, lack of familiarity with the cultural content of English literary texts. However, the present study sets out to suggest that collaborative work in the classroom can bridge learners' difficulties in constructing the meaning of literary texts. The research suggests a new model to improve the teaching of literary short fiction in one of the English departments in Libyan universities. The suggested model emphasizes three main tenets:

1. The role of background knowledge in processing literary short fiction. The background knowledge includes not only knowledge of English language but also familiarity with cultural content of the literary text as well as the formal organization of the literary texts.
2. Since language and culture are intertwined, the approach focuses on developing Libyan learners' cultural and intercultural awareness.
3. The approach suggests the use of Learning Conversations as a scaffolding procedure that allows more interaction and negotiation for co-constructing the meaning of the text.

The study adopts a qualitative research approach. The investigation is carried out across three phases. Phase 1 focuses on the assessment of the Libyan EFL participant problems in reading literary texts by interviewing the ten participants and using a diagnostic test. The second phase is interventional. It seeks to investigate learners' development in constructing the meaning of literary text through the suggested scaffolding procedure (i.e. Learning Conversations). The third phase of the investigation explores learners' reflections on the effectiveness of interactive work in reading literature. The study aims at providing evidence of Libyan EFL learners' perspective of the new model and the development of their understanding.

Key words: Learning Conversations, English as a foreign language (EFL), dialogic exchanges

Recommended citation: Dr Hana A. Ali Mohamed. INTERCULTURAL INTERACTIVE PROCESSING MODEL OF READING ENGLISH AS A FOREIGN LANGUAGE SHORT FICTION IN THE LIBYAN CONTEXT. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 31-52 (2019).

Introduction

Research studies in English language learning and teaching have been seeking to find ways in which EFL/ESL learners can improve their reading comprehension. Different reading models have been suggested in order to provide insights into the strategies of proficient comprehension. Such models range from text decoding: bottom-up processing, which involves decoding the text words, phrases and sentences for constructing meaning (LaBerge & Samuels, 1974), to prior knowledge activation: top-down processing which assumes that readers use their background knowledge of the language, the text and the world to construct the meaning of texts (Carrell, 1987). In addition, a focus on the employment of these two processes simultaneously has been stressed in the context of EFL/ESL reading comprehension (Rumelhart, 1977). Recent research, however, emphasizes the role of social interaction to enhance the comprehension of different text types including literary and non-literary texts (Applebee, Langer, Nystrand, & Gamoran, 2003). That is, interaction between learners about the text content enables readers to share knowledge and appropriate strategies (Goldman, 1997).

During the past decade, there have been limited number of research studies conducted in Libya in relation to the teaching of literature as an authentic text (e.g. El-Naili, 2006; Elbadri, 2009; Abu-

baker, 2012; Pathan, 2013). However, unsystematic observation by the researcher over a number of years' teaching in the university level teaching literature in Libya supported by anecdotal evidence from foregoing research suggest that pedagogical approaches to teaching reading comprehension in Libya are still committed to teacher-centred approaches, which have led to unsatisfactory results with respect to both academic achievement and language learning. For this reason, there is an urgent need for more research on alternative teaching and learning approaches, which provide insights into improving the learning of future generations. An interactive learning approach is a relatively new student-centred approach that appears not to have been practised in Libya to date. Therefore, this research is an attempt to compensate for this lack in the Libyan EFL learning context and stimulate future research into the field of interactive learning in the Libyan context. In addition, as language and culture are closely related, the study maintains the role of culture in comprehending literary texts. Therefore, the study considers the development of learners' cultural and intercultural awareness for deeper understanding of literary texts through collaborative interaction.

Thus, the rationale of the study arises from the need to explore an alternative approach for teaching English literature after perceiving the inadequacies of the current

approaches in the field. The new approach focuses on the co-construction of meaning for deep understanding which brought about by the active role of learners with the teacher guidance. More specifically, the study investigates whether or not an interactive learning approach holds the potential to make reading literature more effective in the EFL Libyan setting. Therefore, the role of interaction for learning is investigated.

Literature review

Cognitive processing in the 1970s was characterized by the construct of background knowledge based on Kant's philosophy, which stresses the role of previous experiences in processing new learning. Researchers investigated human language in the light of the interaction between a symbol system and the human mind. Readers' knowledge is considered as 'powerful, pervasive, individualistic, and modifiable' (Alexander & Fox, 2004, p. 42). Schema theory therefore emerged as one of the most important constructs of this era.

Schema theory conceptualizes the role of background knowledge for reading comprehension (Hedge, 2001). Nassaji (2002) proposes that schema theory deals with previous knowledge that readers already possess. According to this theory, reading comprehension is 'a process of mapping the information from the text onto these pre-existing knowledge structures, and that knowledge-based processes are

predictive and reader-driven' (Nassaji, 2002, p. 444). To put it simply, schema theory holds that different types of written texts are meaningless to readers, unless readers relate their previously acquired background knowledge to the text content (Alderson, 2000; Alptekin, 2006; Anderson & Cheng, 1999; Carrell, 1983; Carrell & Eisterhold, 1983; Grabe & Stoller, 2002; Johnson, 1981, 1982; Ketchum, 2006; McKay, 1987). The essential stored information required for interpreting texts is known as 'text schemata', whereas the prior knowledge is known as 'the reader's background knowledge' (An, 2013, p. 1).

Background knowledge that readers make use of during their engagement with reading texts is of different types (Carrell & Eisterhold, 1983; Nassaji, 2002; Oller, 1995). The most frequently referred to and discussed are content schema, cultural schema and formal schema. Content schema involves knowledge of the content (Carrell, 1983) and includes background knowledge and subject matter knowledge. Background knowledge refers to learners previously acquired information that is not necessarily included in the text content. Subject matter knowledge refers to the knowledge that is explicitly included in the reading text content (Alderson, 2000). Ketchum (2006) further suggests cultural schema as one type of content schema.

Cultural schema represents the familiarity of readers with the

cultural content of the text. Ketchum (2006) stresses the importance of cultural familiarity for full understanding of the text meaning intended by the writer (see section 2.2.4). As discussed earlier in this chapter, if the cultural content of the text is different from the readers' own cultural background, text processing can result in a different interpretation from that intended by the writer (Erten&Razi, 2009; Ketchum, 2006). Since some texts, like short stories, impose the inclusion of readers with 'real material persons, events, places, and socio-cultural relations' (Oller, 1995, p. 299), readers' familiarity with the cultural content of the reading text contributes to an overall understanding of the writer's intention (Oller, 1995; Ketchum, 2006).

The other type of background knowledge includes formal or textual schema. Formal schema refers to the familiarity with the language system. Additionally, it involves knowledge of text organization and the differences between one text genre and others (Erten&Razi, 2009). Formal schema embodies 'background knowledge of the formal, rhetorical organizational structures of different types of texts' (Carrel &Eisterhold, 1983, p. 79). Different text types such as informative articles, short stories, or poems present information distinctively. Readers' unfamiliarity with the formal organizations of texts result in difficulties for text processing and understanding

(Carrel &Eisterhold, 1983; An, 2013; Carrell, 1987; Alderson, 2000).

The focus of schema theory on the role of background knowledge views reading comprehension as a combination of sources to support text comprehension. This view of reading comprehension is thought of as essentially relevant to EFL/ESL reading contexts (Nassaji, 2002; Rumelhart, 1977; Stanovich, 1980; Grabe&Stoller, 2002).

Studies investigating the role of background knowledge promote the role of schema in reading comprehension. They imply the need for readers or learners in the ESL/EFL contexts to construct meaning i.e. learn how to learn. Since the mid-1980s, second language acquisition research SLA stresses the use of language in real life situations for learning. By the mid-1990s, SLA research applied socialization approaches to adult learners in second language learning contexts (Duff, 1995; Harklau, 1994). Research studies revealed how learners can be enabled to become culturally and socially competent in the communicative contexts. Such a focus indicates a shift from the cognitivist paradigm to the role of socialization.

Being inspired by the social constructivist paradigm, the role of social interaction has been the focus of many of ESL studies (Slavin, 1991; Anton, 1999; Storch, 1999, 2005; Van Lier, 2014). Research focuses on having students working together to share their ideas, views, understanding and negotiate each

other's perspectives. Thus, the role of learners is not a passive recipient but an active participant in which learners are part of their own learning (Jones & Brader, 2002). Such views gave reading research a more holistic perspective. The goal of learning is no longer the knowledge held by individuals rather the intention is on meaning making arising from individuals' interaction with each other and the teacher

Social interaction in the classroom takes the forms of 'dialogic exchanges' and 'negotiation of meaning' for learning. Social constructivism assumes that knowledge development is not separately embodied within individuals (Tobin & Tippin, 1993); instead, it happens as a result of being engaged with others in a social interactive environment (Palincsar, 1998).

It is assumed that learners have to construct their own knowledge individually and collectively. Each learner has a tool kit of concepts and skills with which he or she must construct knowledge to solve problems presented by the environment. The role of the community - other learners and teacher - is to provide the setting, pose the challenges, and offer the support (Davis, Maher, & Noddings 1990, p. 3)

Vygotsky gives prominence to the role of social interaction for individual's learning and development. Mental activities develop into higher functions through social interaction

(Lantolf & Appel, 1994). Therefore, cognitive development is not only a matter of a systematic internal processing; rather individual cognitive development is a result of socially meaningful engagements (Lantolf & Appel, 1994). New concepts are acquired through social interactions. Accordingly, the Vygotskian perspective emphasizes social and cognitive development. In this respect, it is similar to traditional cognitive approaches discussed in the previous section. However, its distinctiveness lies in stressing the social dimension. Vygotsky (1979) states 'The social dimension of consciousness [i.e. all mental processes] is primary in time and fact. The individual dimension of consciousness is derivative and secondary' (p. 30). Sociocultural theory does not deny the innate biological capacities. Lantolf and Pavlenko (1995) state

Development does not proceed as the unfolding of inborn capacities, but as the transformation of innate capacities once they intertwine with socioculturally constructed mediational means (p. 109 cited in Zuengler & Miller, 2006, p. 39).

A number of EFL research studies have investigated the influence of interactive work on learners' development of text understanding. Chang (1995) compared the traditional method of whole-class teaching and an interactive reading approach in an English reading class. The results revealed that the average scores of the participants in the experimental

group that had been taught interactively were significantly better than that of the students in the control traditional teacher-centred class. Stevens, Slavin, and Farnish. (1991), Wang (2008), and Anderson and Roit (1993) drew the same conclusions of their experimental approach.

In investigating the role of social interaction in text comprehension, Wang (2008), examined the effect of collaborative strategic reading (CSR) on the reading comprehension of sixthgrade learners. CSR involves learners' engagement in a dialogue for shared understanding. Sixty-two pupils were divided into two groups. A control group received a traditional teacherdirected reading instruction and an experimental group taught with CSR instruction using story retelling strategy for fifteen weeks. The study used multiple measures: a questionnaire of English learning background and pre-tests and post-tests of reading comprehension. Based on the results, the researcher concluded that learner interaction through the use of CSR improved participant overall reading comprehension.

Huang's study was different (2004, cited in ZainolAbidin, &Riswanto, 2012). The study focused on developing high school students' strategic reading and critical thinking ability during classroom interaction. The

conclusions showed that the group, which worked interactively, did not outperform the control group. However, qualitative analysis on postreading writing samples revealed that interaction among participants assisted their critical thinking and idea exploration. In addition, a majority of the participants' reflections from the post-intervention questionnaire viewed CSR as an effective teaching strategy that encouraged their autonomous learning skills. The somewhat contradictory results of this study propose a more in-depth investigation to scrutinize learners' reading developmental progress during interaction with other learners and the teacher in a language-learning context.

Drawing on the literature, this study is based on the premise that rooted in a social constructivist paradigm, learner interaction can support individual construction of meaning through scaffolding techniques. The study focuses on investigating the role of Learning Conversations. Learners will be encouraged to interact collaboratively to co-construct meaning during their group work. The teacher/researcher will mediate and scaffold in areas where learners seem unable to construct the meaning. At this point, the teacher mediates learners' current level to develop understanding.

Learning Conversations in the

classroom involve dialogic-based instruction to move learning and understanding to a higher level. They stress the role of teachers for mediating learning. Teachers mediate the learning process to conduct the conversations and guide the talk at an appropriate level in order to activate learners' existing knowledge (schema activation; see section 2.3.1) and develop new understandings (Harnett, 2008). Learning Conversations give rise to more thoughtful questions that elaborate the relation between learners' existing schema and the correction of misunderstanding rather than merely selecting correct answers from the learners (Rohler&Cantlon, 1997). Such process of elaborating the relation between new learning and learners' existing knowledge is at the core of social constructivism.

Wells and Arauz (2006) argue that the ordinary classroom activity of asking and answering questions does not provide learners with the opportunity for discussing their ideas or commenting on other learners' responses. Such activities typically involve the teacher asking a question followed by a learner answer and the teacher evaluates the response, initiation-response-evaluation (IRE). The three processes tend to close dialogue with few opportunities for further thoughtful questions. Researchers stress the role of other types of interaction besides

the IRE procedure for achieving deeper learning and making learning settings more dialogic (Mercer, 1995; Gibbons, 2015).

Learning Conversations require teachers to encourage learner's active participation in extended dialogue to enable them to articulate, reflect upon and modify their understanding (Mercer, 2000) what Swain (2009) refers to as languaging. During Learning Conversations, teachers encourage interactive talk to develop gradually. Dialogic interaction contributes to meaning making and assists learners in deeper understanding and reflection (Myhill, 2006; Aljaafreh&Lantolf, 1994). It is a prerequisite for effective intervention to identify the learners' needs which in turn guide the nature of the dialogues to emerge: 'no language teaching program should be designed without a thorough needs analysis' (Long, 2005, p. 1). At this point, it must be stressed that such interventional meditation for learning is not restricted to a specific age group or particular learning contexts.

Research Questions

The discussion of the role of background knowledge in comprehending texts and identifying the role of social interaction for learning led to the emergence of the following research questions with an overall aim of investigating the effect of both types of interaction-social and

psycholinguistic- in enhancing EFL Libyan students' comprehension of short fiction:

1. What are the perceived problems of EFL Libyan learners in reading short stories?
2. How effective is schematic activation including text organization and text cultural content in supporting EFL Libyan learners' understanding of short stories?
3. How is learners' construction of meaning supported through Learning Conversations?
4. What are the perceptions of Libyan students of using Learning Conversations in an interactive on-line VLE in relation to support their comprehension of short stories?

Theoretical Framework

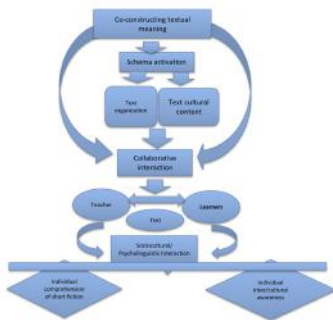
The present research focuses on the role of two different kinds of interaction for the reading of literary texts at the university level in Libya. The first is psycholinguistic interaction between the reader and the text and the second interaction is collaborative interaction for learning through VLEs. These two different types of interaction have led to the design of the study, which explores learner-centred virtual learning environments (VLEs) in the Libyan context. In this study, there is an emphasis on the role of the teacher in providing learners with the relevant background knowledge to notice, develop and extend their cultural and intercultural awareness of the text they are going to read

(Psycholinguistic interaction). In addition, the study focuses on the role of the teacher in mediating the learning process using Learning Conversations as a scaffolding procedure for mutual understanding. In line with this study, Sinclair (2008) emphasizes that teacher's mediation can foster learners' awareness of the learning process and the subject of learning. Accordingly, the teacher needs to identify, prior to and during the reading process, the degree and level of scaffolding offered to learners through the Learning Conversations. Learners will engage actively through dialogues with other learners and with the teacher to negotiate the meaning of texts.

Teacher intervention through Learning Conversations raises awareness of the learner's needs and identifies any further problems in setting learning goals. Activities prior to the reading process focuses on the problematic areas identified by each learner in reading literary texts. The purpose of this is to build relevant language and cultural knowledge and to encourage learners to reflect on their problems and cognitive processes while reading. In other words, Learning Conversations as a scaffolding procedure are used to engage the learners in discussions for negotiating the meaning with the help of their teacher to guide the learners to deeper levels of understanding and provide learning opportunities. Learners, therefore, are not 'the processors of input or

producers of output' (Gibbons, 2003, p. 248). Rather, Learning Conversations, as employed in this study, create opportunities for mediating learning in order to appropriate the scaffolding level and help learners negotiate for meaning.

Figure 1 Stages of Intercultural Interactive Processing Model of Reading EFL short fiction



Participants of the study

Considering the research focus, the researcher has employed a purposeful sampling strategy. The sample of the current study comprises a group of 10 upper-intermediate Libyan EFL learners who volunteered to participate. The participants all specialize in English language and linguistics. They study English literature as a compulsory university course. The participants are registered in semester 5 in Benghazi University, which is one of the oldest and the largest universities in Libya. The purpose of selecting semester 5 Libyan EFL learners is to avoid beginners of reading English short fiction in

semesters 2 and 4 or very advanced learners of semesters 6 and 7. The participants range in age from 20 to 22. They are all Libyans and Arabic is their mother tongue. The students involved in the study have not experienced a dialogic interactive approach to learning due to the more traditional Libyan teaching approach, which is primarily lecture-based. Therefore, the participants fit the purpose of the present study because they are all learners of EFL and have been exposed to English literary materials. In the analysis of the data, the participants were given numbers from 1 to 10 instead of using their names for ethical considerations.

The texts used in the study

The online learning sessions founded on four literary texts ran across five reading sessions. They were all English short stories, which are included in the university curriculum and taught in the Department of English Language and Linguistics in Benghazi University. The stories were of different length: two short stories and two longer ones to investigate if there would be any influence of the text length on the learners' interest or their reading ability while reading the stories. The original forms of the texts were used with no changes or modifications to the text. The researcher's work was on setting the pre-reading activities, which intended to provide the learners with some background information and activate their schema. The

researcher's work also involved setting comprehension questions that focus on learners' ability to construct the meaning as well as to consider the text cultural content while reading.

The four stories included in the sessions were:

Session 1: The Cask of Amontillado by Edgar Allan Poe

The Cask of Amontillado is a short story written by Edgar Allan Poe. It was first published in 1846. The story is set in an underground catacomb in Italy, during Carnival. The events of the story are about two friends: Montresor and Fortunato. Montresor decides to take revenge on Fortunato for an insult, which remains unstated in the story. Fortunato has a passion for wine used by Montresor to bring Fortunato to his death.

Session 2: The Ambitious Guest by Nathaniel Hawthorne

The Ambitious Guest is a short story about a young man who visits a family living in a dangerous area of Crawford Notch, which is located through the White Mountains of New Hampshire. The family built a shelter to save themselves from the frequent rock fall from the mountain. On arrival, the guest shared his ambitions and dreams with the family. However, they all perished because of the bad weather in the shelter which they thought will save them.

Session 3: The story of an hour by Kate Chopin

The story was written in 1894. It was about Mrs. Mallard, who has a

heart problem. She received bad news of her husband's death in an accident. Her reaction to the news included sadness and happiness due to the life she had with him. However, the 'news' turned out to be a joke that led to the subsequent death of Mrs. Mallard.

Chopin in The Story of an Hour addresses the societal tradition of that period in which women were subordinate to men. Some information about the issue was presented to learners prior to reading. Constructing the meaning of the text involves a consideration of the cultural content of the period.

Sessions 4-5: Young Goodman Brown by Nathaniel Hawthorne

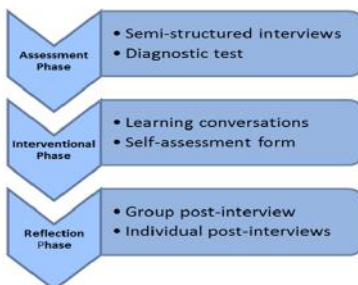
This story is the longest one. It was presented through two learning sessions. The events of the story took place in 17th century Puritan New England. Hawthorne addresses the Puritan belief that all of humanity exists in a state of corruption. The symbolic manner of the story shows how Young Goodman Brown takes a journey in the forest during a dark evening for self-investigation. After his return, he lost belief in the people of his village including his wife.

Methods of data collection

In accordance with ethical guidelines of the University of Aberdeen, the researcher was granted an ethical approval. Following the ethical approval, the design of the study in terms of the data collection methods and the activities to be used with the

participants in the online learning sessions was directed by the research questions. The study is organized into three phases to consider the potential learning problems of reading and understanding EFL literature, an assessment of the learners' needs is essential to guide the design of the intervention. An initial assessment of learners' needs is assigned. This phase is referred to as the Assessment Phase. Subsequently, the study examines the effect of the interventional scaffolding of the dialogic exchanges through the Learning Conversations which involve a closer investigation of the joint work of the teacher (researcher) and the learners in co-constructing the text meaning. Accordingly, collecting data from the Learning Conversations in each session is fundamental. This stage is referred to as the Interventional Phase. Following the Interventional Phase, participants have to reflect on the effectiveness of the interventional classes on developing their construction of the text meaning. This phase is labelled the Reflection Phase.

Stages of the data collection



Data analysis

Following the data collection process, two different types of analysis were applied to the transcribed data. Content analysis was used with the initial interviews and the post interviews as well as the self-assessment forms of the learners to interpret the findings by coding the data into meaningful categories. Discourse analysis however was applied to the Learning Conversations of the online learning session in an effort to scrutinize the learners' talk during the online dialogic interaction of the Learning Conversations.

Analysis of the assessment phase

Initial interview data analysis

During the initial interviews, the participants raised important pedagogical issues related to reading English literature in the Libyan context. Such issues represent the teaching and learning practices common in the Libyan learning setting. They can be summarized in the following in the following points:

1. Learner overreliance on memorization

The first issue concerns the role of memorization, which was stressed by three of the participants. Student 5 pointed out that in literature courses they are required to memorize information introduced by the teachers and to reproduce the information in the exams.

S 5 Not only to read it. There is teachers who read the story and wants us to memorize some important points, which will they will come in the exams.

As the teachers require students to learn some textual features, learners over-rely on memorization, which they find difficult. One of the students explained that memorizing the formal features of the literary texts for the exams is very difficult as they study a considerable number of texts.

S 9 It is not only about memorizing staff - memorizing this and so. We take a lot of stories, so (masaletalhafedsatakonsaaba fi elemtehan, ahyannansamathlan al point of view men kesa le kesa) memorization for the exam will be difficult. Sometimes I can't remember, for example, the point of view of one story to another.

The data holds that the traditional teaching practices applied in the Libyan university limit the active role of the learners. The data indicate that learners rely on the information from the teachers without thinking or making sense of the text from their own point of view. Teachers transmit some formal features of the text and the learners are required to memorize them. Such practice considers education as a process of storing information to be recalled later for the exams. In other words, learners memorize some features of the stories for passing their exams without necessarily an understanding of underpinning principles.

2. Learner engagement/ Preparation

Another pedagogical factor that emerged from the coding of the initial interview is related to the learner engagement in the reading

process. Learners expressed their needs in the EFL literature class stating that they need to prepare the literary text before class. Four of the participants indicated that preparation would help understanding the content of the text.

S 8 I think, I need some time to read the story before the class. I think, this will help me understand more (translation).

In respect of the above data, the participants pointed out some practices for their engagement in the reading process involving learners' schematic familiarity with the text content. The participants explained that reading the story before class would help their understanding. Moreover, the data reveal that learners needed some kind of knowledge of the text in order to engage in the reading process. Teacher transmission of some formal information about the text without learners' awareness of the text content leads them to lack interest and engagement as they do not possess the essential schema that engage them in the reading process

3. Opportunities for learner discussion

Another pedagogical issue that four of the participants proposed during the initial interview is the role of discussion. In spite of the dominance of the traditional (i.e. teacher-centred) classroom in the Libyan education, Libyan learners are aware of the importance of discussion in terms of deepening their understanding. Student 5 also explained that discussion can

highlight some important points that the learner might not be aware of.

S 5 Also I want to see other students a point of view about the stories because sometimes the story that has more than one idea. May be a student see it from aside and another see it from another side.

4. Difficulties in understanding the text

The coding process of the initial interviews also indicated that Libyan EFL learners in the Department of English language and Linguistics have many different problems with the literary text itself. These problems range from the lexical level (e.g. understanding individual words from the text) to textual (e.g. following the development of the story). The data reveal that the learners lack the lexical knowledge that make it possible for them to read short fiction without support. However, the learners are more aware of the reasons why the words in literary texts are difficult on the basis of their experiences of reading EFL literary texts. The participants emphasized the different reasons for the difficulty of vocabulary in literary texts. Firstly, two students explained that there are some words that their meanings cannot be found in the dictionaries. Some of these words are either non-English words or they are old English words such as 'thee' and 'thou'.

Additionally, student 5 explained that the dictionary meaning of some words does not fit in the text. The data indicate that as some words are used in an indirect or figurative way

for specific meanings the literary writer intends to convey therefore, the denotative (i.e. dictionary) meaning does not fit in the text. Accordingly, based on their experiences, the learners find it difficult to relate the denotative meaning of the word to the context in which it is used.

S 5 It was also difficult for me to understand it because when I search it in dictionaries sometimes I do not find the meaning for the word or sometimes I don't found the word ever. Also, I find the meaning but not suitable to the story. Its meaning.

Difficulties experienced in understanding vocabulary in literary texts discussed in the previous section have the effect of preventing Libyan EFL learners' understanding of the story development. In addition, comprehension difficulties are usually related to the specific organization of literary texts (i.e. the formal organization of the text) and structure designed by the writer. Libyan EFL learners usually find it difficult to follow the development of the story as they lack familiarity with organization of the text.

5. Lack of awareness of cultural reference in the text

Cultural references are another difficulty that learners explained in the initial interviews. The data reveal that different cultures or different periods of history presented in literature do not correspond to familiarity of learners' own views or beliefs. Therefore, lack of awareness with the cultural content in the

literary text impedes their understanding. The learners raised an important point regarding the cultural content of literature. They indicated that they need to be made more aware of the cultural norms in the text. Student 3 below stressed the role of the teacher for providing the learners with information of the cultural information involved in literature.

According to the initial semi-structured interview data, Libyan EFL learners' difficulties in learning English literature are not only related to the nature of English literary texts such as the lexicon of the text, the cultural reference, and comprehending the development of the events, but also to traditional teaching practices and deficiencies in educational resources.

In spite of the traditional approaches that dominate teaching practices in Libya, learners are aware of the importance of their active role in the learning process. During the initial interviews, learners stressed that there should be more questioning and discussion in the class. Therefore, there should be a further exploration of the effectiveness of involving them in the process of reading literature.

Another important concern is the deficiency of the resources that contribute to develop the Libyan EFL learners' reading habits. There is a scarcity in the reading materials and learners do not usually engage in reading activities that would contribute to developing their reading skill in general and reading EFL literature in particular. In addition, there is poverty of

technological tools such as the use of classroom computers and internet connection that might contribute to encourage learners' reading and discovery. However, it must be stressed that the learners are aware of the importance of reading and efforts are made to provide materials for developing reading.

Analysis of the diagnostic test

The initial interview data was triangulated with the diagnostic test to investigate learners' difficulties in understanding the meaning of literary texts. Two questions constituted the diagnostic test. The first question included ten open-ended questions. The second question was a multiple-choice question including 6 items. In order to classify the learners' responses of the diagnostic test into different categories, the responses were classified manually for the collation of the results. These results are then listed in tables. In order to identify which category was more problematic, the frequency of errors is summarized below.

Frequency and percentages of incorrect responses

Error type	Frequency of errors	Percentages
Literary devices	14	70%
Ironic language	17	85%
Direct language	9	45%
Text development	37	74%
Cultural content	11	55%
Text meaning	19	63.3%

The analysis of the Preparation Phase identified some of the difficulties that this group of Libyan EFL learners have in reading short fiction written in English. The findings suggest that a number of challenges hindered the understanding of the text meaning. The discussion has elaborated the categorized problems by analysing the initial semi-structured interviews and the diagnostic test. The interviews demonstrated a significant identification of the participants' problems and their needs. The diagnostic test data alone would not have effectively demonstrated and justified the difficulties.

On the basis of the categorized problems that have been identified through the initial interviews and the diagnostic test, the Learning Conversations were designed to scaffold the learners' requirements and difficulties. It is assumed that providing learners with the formal and cultural schema of the text, presenting a glossary of the text and allowing more collaboration among the learners will lead them to construct the meaning of the text and better understand its literary devices such as irony, which was identified as the most problematic in the diagnostic test.

Analysis of the Intervention Phase Findings on the role of the pre-reading information

In the Intervention Phase, learners' questioning in the prereading activities also confirms their lack of familiarity with the cultural content of the stories. In The

Cask of Amontillado, for instance, the learners did not have prior knowledge about the season of Carnival and asked questions during the pre-reading discussion. The data extract below is a part of the learners' discussion:

T The story was set in carnival.

S 10 Carnival for celebration.

S 2 Celebration for what?

S 10 I think it is Halloween.

S 3 Carnival is festival after fasting for 40 days for Christian people after fasting.

S 3 Carnival was in Rome.

In order to compensate their lack of familiarity with the text content, the learners responded differently to the reading text. First of all, the learners sometimes provided personal and individual responses to the pre-reading activities, which intended to build their schema in relation to the text content. Furthermore, the learners related unfamiliar concepts to religious, cultural and personal perspectives of their own familiarity. For example, in The Cask of Amontillado, the learners related the use of the casks to an earlier experience of using casks for storing milk rather than for wine as the latter contradicts their cultural and religious beliefs.

S 2 Nice wooden box.

S 9 It is similar to cartoon where they save milk.

S 3 oh yes, Katolihhhh.

However, by presenting the cultural context of the stories in this study prior to reading, it can be postulated that 'learned' cultural background knowledge contributed

to the learners' construction of the text meaning. In *The Story of An Hour*, the learners justified the joyfulness of Mrs. Mallard's reaction when she heard the news of her husband's death in the light of the cultural background of the story. Learners' familiarity with the kind of life that women had at the period led them to understand the character's reaction. Another example is in *The Cask of Amontillado*. Learners' understanding of the nature of Carnival and the manner of celebrating it led them to justify Montresor's choice of the setting for his crime. This finding confirms Ketchum's claim (2006) who argues that non-native speakers lack the cultural competence that enables them to construct the meaning of the texts without support.

In line with schema theory and the role of background knowledge in reading texts, it can be argued that the pre-reading information compensated the learners' lack of familiarity with the cultural content of the text. In this respect, the present study is in line with earlier research findings (Alptekin, 2006; Erten&Razi, 2009; Sasaki, 2000). These studies support the claim that nativizing texts into the learners' cultural schema develops learners' understanding of the texts as it replaces the foreign cultural content of the text with the learners' native cultural familiarity. However, familiarizing learners with the cultural content of the literary text, rather than nativizing stories, to

enable them to construct the meaning in the light of the writer's intention and the cultural context of the literary text itself, distinguished the present research. Furthermore, the cultural content of the English reading stories enabled the learners to develop their cultural and intercultural awareness of the stories.

The cultural information had an effective role during the reading process more than the information of the formal organization of the text. This finding concurs with the finding of Floyd and Carrell (1987) who concluded that the cultural information affected the process of reading comprehension more than the formal organization of the text. It also confirms the findings of Johnson (1981) whose results emphasize that the role of the cultural origin of the reading texts is more important for understanding the text than the semantic and syntactic complexity of the texts. It should be emphasized here that in the present study the introduction of the formal organization of the stories contained limited information including what, where and when. The learners did not appear to rely very often on formal information. This was confirmed through the learners' reflection when they stressed that the diagram, which presents the formal information, should include more information. It was also emphasized in the Intervention Phase when the learners needed more information about the formal organization for

Young Goodman Brown. Although the learners were presented with some information of the formal organization, it was difficult for them to understand the organization of the text. They needed more information, which indicated which part of the text was real and which was a dream.

Findings on the role of the dialogic exchanges

It was revealed through the analysis of the Learning Conversations that the learners internalized the pre-reading information through discussion and negotiation. This information was used later in constructing text meaning. This is in line with Vygotskian principles concerning the dialogic nature of cognitive development, which is socially constructed. Accordingly, the social context is central for the development of cognition (Thorne, 2005; Johnson, 2009; Lantolf, 2000). The data below show the dialogic exchanges between the teacher and the learner:

T So, why do you think the character chose such time and place?

S2 He is dangerous, many are busy in having fun, eating foods and dancing

In addition to the role of pre-reading information in the reading process, it should be noted that the analysis of the Learning Conversations reveals that dialogic exchanges were useful for both less and more confident students. It can be argued therefore that collaborative reading contributed to improving the

range of learners' reading comprehension in the present investigation. From a social constructivist perspective, the scaffolding provided by more confident readers contributed to the development of the learning of less confident readers. For example, more confident readers used some of the cognitive concepts such as the definitions of some literary terms as well as the pre-reading information, which benefited low performance learners during the discussion by relating them to the reading texts. In other words, more confident readers used their linguistic knowledge as well as the pre-reading information to achieve comprehension of the texts during collaborative reading.

The analysis of the Learning Conversations also revealed that learners engaged effectively to help each other for developing understanding. The learners scaffolded each other many times in the learning process. Sometimes, they clarified the text language in their own words, explained the meaning of unfamiliar vocabulary, corrected other learners' ideas about the text, or summarized what had been already discussed to other learners who were in the process of developing understanding. In The Ambitious Guest, for instance, student 2 did not take a turn in the discussion for constructing the meaning of the metaphor used in the text. However, the learner developed understanding through other learners' discussion. The data below show that student 2 later in

the discussion scaffolding student 10 using the knowledge that he developed through the other learners' discussion.

S 10 Still not understand. S 2 (...)

S 10, the writer used word roar that refers to a lion when it cried out, the sound is like that the storm, done.

As learners may have different perspectives, beliefs and background information, the present study concluded that different views shared through discussion, bridged the gaps in the learners' understanding and contributed to the construction of text meaning. For instance, some of the learners reflected in the post-interviews that they developed more understanding during the discussion because they always 'discover more ideas' and 'more points of view' through the discussion. Others explained that their understanding was 'corrected' when 'discussed' with others. In the words of one student 'a lot of thing was wrong and I correct it when I work with the class.'

The data revealed that exploratory talk through questioning included complementary turns among the learners during the discussion where they could share different ideas and interpretations of the text drawing on prior knowledge as well as their understanding of the texts. The complementary nature of the discussion was confirmed in the present study through the triangulation of the data. It is stressed by student 5 in the Preparation Phase considering the different views which could emerge stating 'May be a student see it from a side and another

see it from side'. The complementary role of the discussion was also revealed through the analysis of the Learning Conversation. In *The Ambitious Guest*, for instance, understanding the text involved more interaction between the readers and the text itself, rather than relying on the pre-reading information. The learners' discussion of the story shows that they had complementary discussion relying on the learners' understanding of the story. In other words, every learner understood and remembered a different piece of information about the text. This led them to complement one another during the discussion for meaning making of the text. This was confirmed by the learners' reflection in the post interviews when student 9, for example, stated 'everyone had a point and I can understand more through these point'.

Despite the benefits of the discussion for meaning-making of the texts, it was confusing for some learners. The different views included in the discussion made some learners feel confused about the meaning. For instance, in *The Cask of Amontillado*, student 3 stated 'Really I feel lost after the idea of revenge'. Student 6 in the post interviews also confirmed the confusion of ideas included in the discussion when the student indicated 'Ok - but in other times I said a lot of views made me lose my focus'. This was addressed in the present study through the direct intervention of the teacher to indicate which responses provided by

the learners were related to the meaning as illustrated in the analysis of the Learning Conversations, increasing the learners' concentration on the relevant answers.

It should be stressed here that the discussion in the present study also involved focusing on learners' background knowledge and prior learning for meaning making of the texts. However, throughout the sessions some learners found it difficult to understand independently without scaffolding including online information as well as teacher intervention. For instance, in the analysis of the Learning Conversations student 2 has a good background knowledge of some literary terms. The learner was able to define the linguistic features of symbols and personifications. However, he was not able to construct the meaning of these devices within the literary text itself without scaffolding. Teacher intervention through providing the learners with examples of personification was effective in leading them to finding their own examples as shown in the data below.

T Give me examples of personification

S 2 Personification is a figure of speech where human qualities are given to animals, objects or ideas.

It means representing a non-human thing as if it were human.

T Ok. See this example Time ran yesterday.

S 2 Oh yes, the flame of the candle danced in the dark.

This is example of personification but in the story the traveller, the guest are words used to represent death.

S 5 Mrs. Hana I can give an example of personification, which I have found it while I was reading the story?

T Yes please.

S 5 This sentence was told by the father when the stranger came and the sound of graves were strong and horrible. the old mountain has thrown a stone at us, for fear we should forget him'. The sentence is in the first page at the end of the page.

Although the online information facilitated the learners' role of constructing the meaning, teacher scaffolding was crucial. The role of the teacher in the present research is validated in the analysis of the dialogic exchanges of the collaborative reading process. Accordingly, the use of the Learning Conversations emphasizes the role of the teacher which includes the roles of a facilitator as well as a direct instructor as it will be revealed in the following sections.

Conclusions

The underlying aim of the present study was placed on exploring the effectiveness of learners' familiarity with the structure and the cultural content of EFL literary texts in a collaborative learning setting. Earlier studies that emphasized the role of learners' prior knowledge in the process of reading comprehension were very rich but very limited investigation concentrated on

investigating the role of prior knowledge in a collaborative learning setting. Learners' prior learning and background experiences are critical in the present investigation for effective mutual understanding.

Through the analysis of the data, it was clear that Libyan EFL learners did not rely only on the prior learning for constructing the meaning of the texts. Their everyday experiences and their cultural and religious perspectives provided an integral part of their responses to the texts. This suggests that learners as social beings are influenced by the social and cultural contexts in which they live. The effectiveness of using the learners' cultural background was clearly revealed through the dialogic activities in which the learners were engaged during the reading process.

Hence, an excessive emphasis on the learners' native cultural background as stressed by earlier research might be misleading. Aspects of the cultural content of the reading texts in the socio-cognitive reading context introduced in this study would have the Libyan EFL learners as knowledge producers. Accordingly, the present investigation reveals that a consideration of both the cultural content of the text and learners' native culture has the potential of engaging the learners in

a process of developing their intercultural awareness without excluding their cultural values.

Accordingly, the Intercultural Interactive Processing model of the present study demanded learners' involvement in their own learning with teacher guidance. It included the use of several tools such as the teacher's input and scaffolding, Learning Conversations and learners' reflections through the self-assessment forms. A consideration of the learners' use of the self-assessment forms was constantly incorporated in the designing of the subsequent learning sessions. Thus, the active role of the learners in the present research views learning as a dynamic process which fosters learners' responsibility through the use of Learning Conversations and self-assessment tools in the VLE. The analysis of such tools developed the teacher's awareness of the learners' needs as shown in the analysis of the Learning Conversations and the self-assessment forms. These tools enabled the teacher to provide the learners with materials (e.g. pre-reading input) and scaffolding (e.g. while reading examples) which respond more closely to their needs. The collaborative learning process of the teacher and the learners led to a progressive framework, which supports learners' development.

References

- Abu-baker, F. (2012). Building literary competence of EFL Libyan learners in reading English literary texts. Unpublished M.A, Garyounis University, Benghazi.
- Aljaafreh, A., & Lantolf, J. P. (1994). Negative feedback as regulation and second language learning in the zone of proximal development. *The Modern Language Journal*, 78(4), 465-483.

- Anderson, V., & Roit, M. (1993). Planning and implementing collaborative strategy instruction for delayed readers in grades 6-10. *The Elementary School Journal*, 121-137.
- Anton, M. (1999). The discourse of a learner-centred classroom: Sociocultural perspectives on teacher-learner interaction in the second-language classroom. *Modern Language Journal*, 303-318.
- Applebee, A. N., Langer, J. A., Nystrand, M., & Gamoran, A. (2003). Discussion-based approaches to developing understanding: Classroom instruction and student performance in middle and high school English. *American Educational Research Journal*, 40(3), 685-730.
- Carrell, P. L. (1987). Content and formal schemata in ESL reading. *TESOL Quarterly*, 21(3), 461-481.
- Chang, M. (1995). Teacher-oriented learning vs. cooperative learning in English reading class. *Journal of Pingtung Polytechnic Institute*, 4, 271-277.
- Davis, R., Maher, C., & Noddings, N. (1990). Constructivist views on the learning and teaching of mathematics. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, Monograph, (4)
- Duff, P. A. (1995). An ethnography of communication in immersion classrooms in Hungary. *Tesol Quarterly*, 29(3), 505-537.
- El-badri, H. (2009). Difficulties facing third year learners of English at Garyounis university in inferring the meaning of vocabulary in literary texts. Unpublished M.A, Garyounis University, Benghazi.
- El-Naili, S. (2006). Some difficulties facing third and fourth year students in learning English literary works at the university of Garyounis. Unpublished M.A, Garyounis University, Benghazi.
- Gibbons, P. (2015). Scaffolding language, scaffolding learning. *Teaching English Language Learners in Gibbons, P. (2003). Mediating language learning: Teacher interactions with ESL students in a content-based classroom. Tesol Quarterly*, 247-273. the Mainstream Classroom. Heinemann: Portsmouth, NH.
- Goldman, S. R. (1997). Learning from text: Reflections on the past and suggestions for the future. *Discourse Processes*, 23(3), 357-398.
- Harklau, L. (1994). ESL versus mainstream classes: Contrasting L2 learning environments. *TESOL Quarterly*, 28(2), 241-272.
- Harnett, J. A. (2008). Changing learning conversations: An action research model of reflective professional development. Massey university, Albany, New Zealand.
- Jones, M. G., & Brader-Araje, L. (2002). The impact of constructivism on education: Language, discourse, and meaning. *American Communication Journal*, 5(3), 1-10.
- LaBerge, D., & Samuels, S. J. (1974). Toward a theory of automatic information processing in reading. *Cognitive Psychology*, 6(2), 293-323.
- Lantolf, J. & Pavlenko, A. (1995). Sociocultural theory and second language acquisition. *Annual Review of Applied Linguistics*, 15, 108-124.
- Lantolf, J. P., & Appel, G. (1994). Vygotskian approaches to second language research. Greenwood Publishing Group.
- Long, M. H. (2005). Overview: A rationale for needs analysis and needs analysis research. *Second Language Needs Analysis*, 1-16.
- Mercer, N. (2000). *Words and minds: How we use language to think together*. Psychology Press
- Mercer, N. (1995). *The guided construction of knowledge: Talk amongst teachers and learners, Multilingual matters*. Cromwell press.
- Myhill, D. (2006). Talk, talk, talk: Teaching and learning in whole class discourse. *Research Papers in Education*, 21(1), 19-41.
- Roehler, L. R., & Cantlon, D. J. (1997). Scaffolding: A powerful tool in social constructivist classrooms. *Scaffolding Student Learning: Instructional Approaches and Issues*, 1.

- Rumelhart, D. (1977). Toward an interactive model of reading. N.J, pp. 573-603. In S. Dornic (Ed.), *Attention and performance* (1st ed., pp. 573-603) Erlbaum, Hillsdale, N.J.
- Palincsar, A. S. (1998). Social constructivist perspectives on teaching and learning. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 49(1), 345.
- Pathan, M. M. (2013). Advantages of using short-stories in ELT classroom and the Libyan EFL learners' perceptions towards them for developing reading comprehension skill. *Arab World English Journal*, 4(1).
- Sinclair, B. (2008). Multiple voices: Negotiating pathways towards teacher and learner autonomy. *Learner and Teacher Autonomy: Concepts, Realities, and Responses*, 237-266.
- Slavin, R.E.(1991).Synthesis of research of cooperative learning.*Educational Leadership*, 48(5), 71-82.
- Stevens, R. J., Slavin, R. E., &Farnish, A. M. (1991). The effects of cooperative learning and direct instruction in reading comprehension strategies on main idea identification. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 83(1), 8.
- Storch, N. (1999). Are two heads better than one? pair work and grammatical accuracy. *System*, 27(3), 363-374.
- Storch, N. (2005). Collaborative writing: Product, process, and students' reflections. *Journal of Second Language Writing*, 14(3), 153-173.
- Swain, M. (2009). 4 languaging, agency and collaboration in advanced second language prodcieny1. *Advanced Language Learning: The Contribution of Halliday and Vygotsky*, 95.
- Tobin, K., &Tippins, D.(1993).Constructivism as areferent for teaching and learning. *The Practice of Constructivism in Science Education*, 1, 3-22.
- Van Lier, L. (2014). *Interaction in the language curriculum: Awareness, autonomy and authenticity*. Routledge.
- Vygotsky, L. S. (1979). Consciousness as a problem in the psychology of behavior. *Soviet Psychology*, 17, 3-35
- Wang, T. (2008). The effects of modified collaborative strategic reading on EFL learners' reading comprehension. Unpublished MA Dissertation, National Changhua University of Education, Changhua, Taiwan.
- Wells, G., &Arauz, R. M. (2006). Dialogue in the classroom. *The Journal of the Learning Sciences*, 15(3), 379-428.
- ZainolAbidin, M., &Riswanto, R. (2012). Collaborative strategic reading (CSR) within cognitive and metacognitive strategies perspectives. *International Journal of Humanities and Social Science*, 2(3), 61-70.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 19, 2018., Accepted March 13, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**CAPITAL INFLOWS, FINANCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND
POVERTY REDUCTION IN NIGERIA**

Fisayo Fagbemi* & Toyin Joseph Olufolahan

Obafemi Awolowo University, Ile-Ife, Nigeria

*E-mail: fisay4real@yahoo.com



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-5>

Abstract: This paper examines the joint effect of capital inflows and financial development on poverty reduction in Nigeria between 1980 and 2017 using ARDL bound test and Granger causality test based on Vector Error Correction Model (VECM). As capital inflows involved three subcategories (FDI, portfolio investment and remittances), the paper assesses all three in turn. The empirical findings indicate that the interaction term of capital inflows and financial development reflects a significant substantial decrease in poverty headcount in the long run as well as in the short run, underlining that the indirect role of both capital inflows and financial deepening in poverty reducing channel is substantial and increasingly vital. This evidence underscores the view that capital inflows and financial development could jointly strengthen the means to reinforce incentive and inclusive structures for the extension of credit to innovative small enterprises or individuals, and thereby accentuating poverty-reducing effect. Further evidence reveals that the causal direction between capital inflows, financial development and poverty alleviation is unidirectional, which runs from both foreign capital inflows and financial deepening to poverty level. Hence, the study suggests that ensuring that financial sector development coincides with rising inclusiveness and rates of capital inflows is critical for improved performance and poverty alleviation drive in Nigeria.

Key words: Capital Inflows, Financial Development, Poverty Reduction, ARDL, Nigeria

Recommended citation: Fisayo Fagbemi* & Toyin Joseph Olufolahan. CAPITAL INFLOWS, FINANCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND POVERTY REDUCTION IN NIGERIA. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 53-78 (2019).

1.0 Introduction

The mainstream conjecture that investment through capital inflows will have positive and crucial development paybacks predicated efforts geared towards inducing foreign capital inflows across developing economies. The contemporary policy trend in

developing countries is a reflection of this plausible assertion. It has been advocated in the empirical literature that these flows of capital are beneficial to developing economies owing to their potential salutary effect on economic performance (Adams, 2009; Goldberg, 2004). Although, few studies have

questioned and negated the growth and development gains linked with such flows anchored on the premise that foreign investment rates are very poorly associated with job creation and poverty reduction (UNCTAD, 2005; Rodrik and Subramaniam, 2008; Bhinda and Martin, 2009), the dominant view has been the productivity - enhancing impact. The optimistic side views foreign capital inflows as a path that offers the framework for increasing total factor productivity and, in general, the efficient utilisation of resources in the recipient economy (OECD, 2002; Chor et al., 2008). In addition, in the literature, economic development is engendered by rising access to financial instruments (financial inclusion) which induces savings, productive investment and eases the transfer of capital (funds) from abroad, and thus lead to reduced poverty, fall in the level of inequality and improved private investment (Beck, et al., 2007; Demirgüç-Kunt et al., 2011). Accordingly, capital inflows and financial deepening strengthen the means to reinforce structural economic transformation and effective industrial structure for broad - based growth and poverty alleviation.

Considering the preceding salient insights, developing countries, in particular Nigeria, appear to sustain and revitalize global development initiatives for attracting foreign capital inflows and engendering improved access to financial services to alleviating poverty.

Witthefforts made to boost domestic investment and enhance financial sector development in Nigeria, which began in the 1980s with the introduction of structural adjustment programmes (SAPs), the recent statistical report reflects a rise in the level of foreign investment in the country. According to UNCTAD 2018 World Investment Report, FDI Inward Flows (million USD) to Nigeria were put at 3.06 and 4.45 in 2015 and 2016 respectively. With respect to policy measures for enhancing access to financial credit, since 2001, a persistent increase in microfinance credit has accompanied the establishment of microfinance banks mostly at the local level, although only 36% out of the total population has an online bank account (World Bank, 2017). In spite of these multidimensional approach and policy intervention strategies (the launching of a consortium of poverty alleviation schemes), the rate of poverty in Nigeria is quite alarming as the country seems to be "the poverty capital of the world" based on the current world poverty statistics (Brookings Institution, 2018).

Given persistent mass extreme poverty in Nigeria, the assessment of the foremost goal of the Millennium Declaration (i.e. to eradicate extreme hunger and poverty) remains crucial. With extreme poverty in Nigeria rising by six people every minute, compared to India's 73 million, Nigeria has the highest rate of extreme poverty in the world with about 87 million

extreme poor people (Brookings Institution, 2018). In economic and social terms, the country could be regarded as one of the leading retrogressive developing states of the world. As a consequence, attaining the first goal of the United Nations' Sustainable Development Goal (SDG), which is ending extreme poverty, appears to be somewhat difficult. Indeed, Nigeria's case is pulling in massive agitation and debate.

The contribution of capital inflows and financial deepening to poverty reduction may not be as significant and positive as expected in developing countries owing to some certain reasons. For instance, these economies tend to over rely on highly unstable private capital inflows (unpredictable investment sources), it has been advocated that through various channels, poor households could suffer more from such a high level of vulnerability than the non - poor households (Calvo et al., 1994; Son and Kakwani, 2006). Another line of argument, given the set of earlier empirical studies collected by Hulme and Mosley (1996), is that poor households do not often benefit from financial credit expansion; it is only non-poor people usually with income above poverty line (i.e. non - poor borrowers) who can do better with financial credit (mostly micro - loans) would enjoy ample positive impacts. Although few studies on Nigeria corroborate the assertion that inflows of foreign capital do not have a significant effect

on welfare (Akinmulegun, 2012; Ogunniyi and Igberu, 2014), many studies on developing countries including country - specific studies contradict this proposition. Magombeyi and Odhiambo (2017); Soumare (2015); Fowowe and Shuaibu (2014); Gohou and Soumare (2012) provide evidence that between net FDI inflows and improved welfare there exists a strong and positive relationship. Also, in exploring the extent to which microfinance institutions aid the alleviation of poverty, Okpara (2010) posits that the persistent rise in microfinance credit causes a drastic reduction in poverty index. However, no known study explores the joint effect of capital inflows and financial development on poverty reduction in Nigeria. With alarming poverty rate in Nigeria and ever - increasing want of consensus among researchers, few cardinal questions that seem to be inadequately addressed are: a) What is the central cause of escalating poverty level in Nigeria? b) What is the significant welfare benefit arising from foreign capital inflows and improved financial access in Nigeria? c) What is the joint effect of capital inflows and financial development on poverty reduction?

Looking at the divergence in the literature, furthering our understanding of the relationship between capital inflows, financial development and poverty reduction is, thus, fundamental. And as the interaction effect of capital inflows and financial deepening on poverty

reduction is largely under-researched, based on the authors' best knowledge, the paper is the first empirical study to assess this exclusively on Nigeria. Hence the key objective of this study is to investigate the short run, long run and causal relationship between the interaction term - capital inflows and financial development - and poverty reduction in Nigeria. The use of ARDL bound test and Granger causality test based on Vector Error Correction Model (VECM) is yet another significant novelty that the present study develops on the capital inflows - financial development - poverty debate in Nigeria. While known no study has applied this approach regarding the topical issue for Nigeria, it is expected that the technique will aid the elimination of the problem often related with short time series data. Since economic policy-making is instrumental in facilitating positive development outcomes and poverty alleviation, the study sets out to offer guidance for policymakers in championing optimal investment measures and improved financial access for reducing poverty.

The remainder of the study is structured as follows. The immediate section covers the review of the literature. Section 3 describes the set of data and elucidates the methodological approach. Section 4 contains the presentation of results and discussion, and the last section gives concluding remarks.

2.1 Theoretical review

2.1.1 Capital inflows - poverty reduction nexus

The theoretical link between capital inflows and poverty reduction has been surrounded with much divergent views as conflicting propositions continue to gain prominence in the literature. In an effort to elucidate the possible impact of capital inflows (mostly FDI inflows) on poverty reduction, two categories of scholars have predominantly emerged, which include the optimist and pessimist. The optimistic group supports the positive contribution of FDI to poverty reduction. This group is of the view that the benefits of capital inflows could be attained through spillover effects, an increase in investment capital, and employment creation (Meyer 2004; Gorg and Greenaway 2004). On the other hand, the pessimistic view anchors their argument on the dependency theory which covers a negative or insignificant effect of FDI on poverty reduction (Dutt, 1997; Eller, Haiss and Steiner, 2005). This theory explains the underdeveloped nature of developing countries and how the state of their development results in rising poverty. The pessimists buttress their proposition with the notion that in the country that makes investment climate overcrowded, FDI may be unnecessarily overflow investment, and thus results to inflation in the recipient country's interest rate.

In the literature, nonetheless, spillover effects are divided into two; namely horizontal and vertical spillover effects. Horizontal spillover effects result

from nonmarket and non-contractual transactions, in which external parties (i.e. domestic firms) benefit from the foreign firms' resources (Meyer, 2004). These spillover effects are regarded as externalities which are predominantly occur in an intra-industry setup (Meyer, 2004). This process takes place through the technology transfer from foreign firms to local firms in the same level or line of operation but with their technological sophistication operating level differs (Falore and Winkler, 2012). Such Knowledge spillover emanates from labour movement and demonstration effects - arising from local firms that adopt or imitate the innovative approach of foreign firms (Wang and Blomstrom, 1992; Gorg and Greenaway, 2004; Meyer, 2004). In contrast, where inter-industry relations are established and taking place, vertical spillover effects result from product and consumer surplus (Meyer, 2004). Through the interaction between the foreign subsidiary and local economic agents in the recipient country, vertical spillover effect are realised. Vertical spillover is comprised of backward and forward linkages (Sumner, 2005; Liu et al., 2009). Overall, these processes could lead to an increase in investment capital and employment creation, and thus induce poverty reduction.

2.1.2 Financial development - poverty reduction nexus

The nexus between financial development and poverty reduction

has been anchored on certain theoretical premise and conjecture, specifically regarding developing countries. It is of common knowledge that in developing countries, access to formal financial services by the poor is fraught with difficulties. This often forces them to depend instead on a narrow range of usually unproductive and more expensive and risky informal financial services, which constrain them from fully participating in market activities and contributing to economic development.

The pioneer work of Keynes (1937) based on the "motive of finance" for money demand has been linked to the channels through which the poor benefit from formal financial intermediation (services). In 1973 when McKinnon presented the "conduit effect", this theoretical assertion was revisited. It is built on the assumption that the poor who engage in self-financing investment enhance savings through the provision of profitable financial opportunities despite the fact that financial institutions fail to offer them credit. The discussion on the impact of financial sector on the economy is further raised by both McKinnon (1973) and Shaw (1973) as both theories emphasize on related implications and influence of financial sector development. Nonetheless, in the models on the nature of money, their assumptions differ. Premising on the financial liberalisation theory, they are of the view that financial repression, which means the distortion of financial

prices. This distortion involves the real size of the financial system reduces by interest rates in relation to non-financial system, which in turn retards real rate of economic growth (McKinnon, 1973; Shaw, 1973). Fundamentally, their proposition is rest on the conjecture that there exists a positive relationship between interest rates and economic growth, and growth tends to be retarded by low interest rates. At early stage of repression, the nominal interest rate, in terms of administration, fixed and hence the real rate is being kept below the equilibrium level. This argument is anchored on the common notion that developing countries often face with financial repression. They posit that the liberation of these economies from their repressive states would enhance savings, investment and growth, and thus positively affect poverty reduction.

Moreover, give the much elaborative analysis on the channels (credit or money) termed as the "conduit effect" - the medium through which the poor gain from formal financial services, as a consequence, in view of the instrumentality of financial deepening, the McKinnon-Shaw hypothesis is seen as the basis and foundation for poverty reduction. However, Wijnbergen (1983) model faults their conclusion. In negating their assertion, Wijnbergen (1983) stresses that, in the short run, raising interest rate may not induce increased investment and productivity neither decrease

inflation. Giovannini (1983) and Sikorsky (1996) further challenged the tenability of McKinnon (1973) and Shaw (1973) proposition as they seem not to have given elaborate view on the workings and operations of the banking systems across developing countries.

2.2 Empirical review

The empirical evidence on the influence of capital inflows and financial inclusion on poverty reduction in developing economies mostly points to divergent views as the results are mixed. The few studies on this central subject have resulted to diverse conclusions. While some studies stress that both capital inflows and financial inclusion are found to worsen poverty, others conclude that they reduce poverty, and yet others posit that capital inflows and financial inclusion have insignificant impact on the level of poverty in most countries. Hence, these form and shape the discussion of this section.

2.2.1 Capital inflows (FDI, portfolio investment and remittances) and poverty reduction

Beginning with studies on the impact of FDI on poverty reduction, in view of a survey of literature, Magombeyi and Odhiambo (2017) focus on the direct impact of FDI on poverty reduction. They overwhelmingly support the notion that FDI have a positive impact on poverty reduction, while from one sample to another, there are very magnitudes of the effect. In another study, using pooled data from 1981-2011, Fowowe and Shuaibu (2014)

examine the effect of FDI on the poor in a sample of 30 African countries. Based on the Generalised Methods of Moments (GMM) and with World Bank poverty headcount used as a proxy for poverty. They conclude that FDI is good for the poor. In addition, poor countries with a high case of poverty, positive impact of FDI on poverty reduction tends to be high. These findings is also in consonance with the work of Gohou and Soumare (2012) conducted on a sample of 52 African countries between 1990 and 2007 in addressing the same topical subject. Regarding developing countries in particular, using unbalanced panel analysis over the period of 1990 - 2009 and with a sample of 26 developing countries, Ucal (2014) assesses the impact of FDI on poverty. The author also confirms the rising notion that FDI leads to reduced poverty in selected countries, thus underscoring that FDI plays a crucial role in decreasing poverty in these countries. Bharadwaj (2014) using a panel regression analyses the effect of FDI on poverty in 35 developing countries (1990 - 2004). In the study, FDI represents globalisation, while poverty was measured using the headcount ratio and poverty gap. The author's findings indicate that FDI is inversely related to the headcount ratio, underlining the beneficial impact of FDI on poverty reduction.

In studies exclusively based on Nigeria, using time series data, Israel (2014) examines the impact of FDI on poverty reduction in

Nigeria, and with the use of poverty headcount as a proxy for poverty reduction between 1980 and 2009. The author posits that FDI positively impacts poverty reduction. Analogously, Omorogbe et al (2007) employing ordinary least squares technique assess the impact of FDI on poverty reduction in Nigeria. With per capita GDP serves as poverty proxy, their findings indicate that FDI positively induces per capita GDP in Nigeria. In contrast, based on Vector Autoregression over the period of 1986 - 2009, Akinmulegun (2012) analyses the effect of FDI on welfare in Nigeria. The study offers evidence that FDI does not have a significant effect on welfare. Also in line with this empirical claim, while using Ordinary Least Squares approach and per capita GDP as a proxy for poverty, Ogunniyi and Igberu (2014) show that between 1980 and 2012 in Nigeria there exists an insignificant relationship between poverty reduction and FDI.

A number of studies have also been conducted in some countries other than Nigeria. For instance, choosing HDI and GDP per capita as proxies for welfare, Soumare (2015) using dynamic panel data regression and Granger-causality investigates the relationship between FDI and welfare in Northern Africa between 1990 and 2011. The author stresses that between net FDI inflows and improved welfare there exists a strong and positive relationship. Zaman et al. (2012) using the Ordinary Least

Squares (OLS) examine the relationship between FDI and poverty in Pakistan over the period of 1985 - 2011. Adopting headcount as a proxy for poverty, they conclude that FDI positively influences poverty reduction at the national, urban and rural levels. In a similar study, while applying an Autoregressive Distributed Lag (ARDL) approach as poverty headcount serves as a proxy for poverty, Mahmood and Chaudhary (2012) study the contribution of FDI to poverty reduction in Pakistan (1973 - 2003). They also validate the growing view that FDI leads to reduced poverty in Pakistan. Other studies such as Shamim et al. (2014) for Pakistan (1973 - 2011), Uttama (2015) for ASEAN countries (1995 - 2011) and Calvo and Hernandez (2006) for Latin America (1984 - 1998) similarly corroborate the decreasing effect of FDI on poverty. On the other hand, Huang et al. (2010) for 12 East and Latin American countries (1970 - 2005) and Ali and Nishat (2010) for Pakistan (1973 - 2008) posit that FDI does not in any way reduce poverty. Regarding the effect of portfolio investment on poverty reduction, according to OECD (2012), in a highly uncertain economic climate (region) like Africa, portfolio investment seems to have minimal impact on poverty reduction.

In ascertaining the role of remittances in poverty reduction measures, a number of empirical studies observe that remittances - led

poverty reduction. A study by Adams and Page (2005) conducted on 71 developing countries with the use of panel data analysis revealed that remittances and migration serve as critical element and mechanism for alleviating the level, severity and depth of poverty. In another way, Gupta et al. (2009), in their study, observe that remittances, in form of a private transfer nature and which are stable, influence poverty reduction in sub - Saharan African (SSA) countries. This empirical view is also in line with Anyanwu and Erhijakpor (2010) study on 33 African countries. Further study by McKay and Deshingkar (2014) using secondary data extracted from household surveys examine the effect of internal remittances on poverty in 4 African (South Africa, Rwanda, Nigeria and Uganda) and two Asian (Vietnam and Bangladesh) countries. The authors corroborate remittances?led poverty reduction hypothesis. Similarly, from the United States and in view of data from a nationally representative household survey, Adams (2004) with a focus on internal and international remittances on poverty in Guatemala asserts that remittances inflows better influence the severity of poverty reduction compared to the poverty level in Guatemala. Using another approach based on literature review, while giving attention to developing countries, Adams (2011) also observed that international remittances significantly lead to poverty alleviation and improved

health levels in these countries. However, negating theoretical propositions, the study indicates that international remittances adversely affect education, economic growth and labour supply in developing countries.

Also, on developing countries, Serino and Kim (2011) using quantile regression analysis based on panel data between 1981 and 2005 investigate the influence of international remittances on poverty. Accordingly, international remittances are found to induce poverty reduction in developing countries, while among the worst off groups the effect is viewed to be more pronounced. In more recent work, Azam et al. (2016) assess the role of foreign remittances in poverty alleviation focusing on 39 high, middle and lower income countries employing the panel fully modified ordinary least squares (FMOLS) between 1990 and 2014. Although across all countries studied, foreign remittances are noted to induce poverty reduction, the positive influence of foreign remittances on poverty reduction is only found to be statistically significant in high-income countries. In somewhat related argument, Chakra and Leon-Gonzalez (2012) stress that the effect of remittances on inequality and poverty depends on certain prevailing conditions.

In light of country-specific studies, following the study of Waheed et al. (2013), the severity and level of poverty in rural areas of Nigeria are observed to be

decreased by both domestic and foreign remittances. Further evidence noted that, compared to foreign remittances, domestic remittances contribute more towards reducing poverty in rural areas of Nigeria. In line with this evidence, Odozi et al. (2010) using living standard survey data explore the effect of remittances on inequality and poverty in Nigeria. During the period under study, they found that remittances induce inequality and poverty reduction in Nigeria. In Ghana, Adams JR and Cuecuecha (2013) assess the effect of internal and international remittances on investment and poverty. Their findings confirm growing assertion that remittances could induce decreased poverty and facilitate investment across levels in developing countries. In addition, Antwi, Mills and Zhao (2013) examine the effect of workers' remittances on poverty reduction and discover that, via rising income, soothing capital bonds and facilitating consumption of the poor, positive effect of such remittances on poverty reduction. Studies that also support the positive effect of remittances on poverty reduction in other countries include; Wouterse (2010) based on four villages of Burkina Faso with use of Gini and concentration coefficient decomposition approach, Beyene (2014) for Ethiopia using urban household survey data, Qayyum et al. (2008) for Pakistan (1973-2007) employing Autoregressive Distributed Lag (ARDL) and

Hatemi-J and Salah Uddin (2014) for Bangladesh using granger causality test.

2.2.2 Financial development and poverty reduction

In the quest to alleviate poverty, many studies explore the role of financial development in poverty reduction. Beginning with the work of Honohan (2004), evidence indicates that financial depth is adversely associated with headcount poverty. The causal condition of this relationship was examined by Perez-Moreno (2011) who stresses that headcount poverty may be reduced by financial development, although in view of certain caveats resulting from the findings. For instance, the type of the financial development indicator employed mostly determines the results and the sensitivity of results to time periods under studied. Accordingly the author reveals that there is more supportive evidence that finance induces poverty reduction when liquid liabilities to GDP is used as an indicator of financial deepening than when credit to the private sector is employed. Similarly, Beck et al. (2004), using panel data for 58 developing countries between 1980 and 2000, assert that financial development reduces poverty more than its impact on aggregate growth. By disproportionately enhancing the income of the poor, the authors confirm that countries with well-developed financial intermediaries experience faster reduction in both income inequality and poverty. In another study centers on financial

access conducted by Mookerjee and Kalipioni (2010), the link between financial access and income inequality is examined. In the study, findings show a negative and significant relationship between bank branch expansion and the Gini coefficient.

With a plethora of poverty measures representing dependent variables, Donou-Adonsou and Sylwester (2016) offer evidence that poverty could be reduced by financial sector development in view of both depth measures of informal and formal financial sector variables. Although both measures contribute to poverty decline, the impact of the informal sector is weak compared to formal banking sector. Perhaps owing to data availability, in comparison with those on financial deepening, studies assessing the effect of financial access on the poor are quite few. In a more recent study, Rewilak (2017) examines whether financial development brings about poverty reduction using private credit and broad money as measures of financial development and separate it into four categories. With the emphasis on Eastern European economies, Latin American and sub-Saharan African countries (2004 - 2015), the author posits that both greater physical access and financial deepening are beneficial and conducive for the reduction in the proportion of people below the poverty line. Using panel data for a sample of developing countries (1966 - 2000), Jeanneney and Kpodar (2011) analyse how financial

development aids poverty reduction indirectly through economic growth and directly through the McKinnon conduit effect. Their findings confirm that the poor gain from having access to financial intermediary services, although the gain may be limited by financial instability. However, overall, the benefit of increased access to financial services usually outweighs the cost. Fowowe and Abidoye (2011) assess the effect of financial development (as measured by private credit) on the growth of inequality and poverty in sub-Saharan African countries. The authors confirm that private credit does not significantly influence poverty reduction in the region.

In country - specific studies, based on India, Burgess and Pande (2005) offer a comprehensive study. The authors explore the effect of the Indian Social Banking Experiment, for every bank branch opened up in a previously served area, the Bank of India decreed that an institution had to open four branches in presently unserved areas. The effect on poverty seemed to be dramatic as the rural headcount decreasing by 14-17 percentage points. Thus, rural savings accounts, in particular, increased by over 100 million and notably rural loan accounts by 25 million. On whether access to banking services can reduce poverty, through a State-wise Assessment in India, Bhandari (2009) examines the drive towards financial inclusion in view of the increase in bank accounts of designated commercial banks and changes in the population

of people below poverty line. The findings show that, across states, the increase in bank accounts is not significantly related with the decrease in below poverty line population. The author posits on the premise that offering banking services to a huge number of people is not the effective tool for poverty reduction measure. A study on Nigeria by Okpara (2010), investigates the extent to which microfinance institutions aid the alleviation of poverty. The author's findings identify two phases through which the effect of micro finance could be explained. The first phase, regarded as the take-off stage, with increasing microfinance credit, views poverty as increasing at a decreasing rate. In the second phase, starting from year 2001 precisely, the persistent rise in microfinance credit causes a drastic reduction in poverty index. Thus, at present, microfinance credit reduces poverty in Nigeria. There are several other studies that also underscore the positive impact of access to financial services on poverty reduction. The studies include; Odhiambo (2009) for Kenya (1968-2006), Quartey (2008) for Ghana and Geda et al. (2006) for Ethiopia (1994 - 2000).

In all, in line with the preceding review, there is a growing trend of divergent conclusions in addition to the scant efforts on the linkage between capital inflows, financial sector development and poverty alleviation in Nigeria. In a nutshell, the nonexistence of the empirical assessment of the dynamic interaction between foreign capital inflows - financial deepening -

poverty nexus could account for the paucity of the comprehensive outlines of policy options available in any economy. In essence, since having an inclusive understanding of this link is central to attaining the Sustainable Development Goal (SDG) of ending extreme poverty by 2030, want of detailed expositions on the joint impact of capital inflows and financial development on poverty reduction may give rise to suboptimal performance and in turn, accentuate unattainable policy goal (poverty alleviation). Hence, the paper's findings could help offering adequate and comprehensive policy options crucial for alleviating poverty in Nigeria.

3. Data and methodology

3.1 Data

The study uses time series data set between 1980 and 2017. The scope encompasses the period when key policy reforms were introduced - such as Structural Adjustment Programmes (SAPs) and the Millennium Declaration - to boost domestic investment, strengthen financial access, reinforce structural economic transformation and alleviate poverty. Three capital inflows measures are employed: foreign direct investment (FDI), net inflows (% of GDP), portfolio investment and personal remittances, received (% of GDP). FDI represents net inflows - new investment inflows less disinvestment - in the reporting economy from external (foreign) investors (% of GDP). Personal remittances, received (% of GDP) consist

personal transfers and compensation of employees, while portfolio investment captures transactions in equity and debt securities. The financial development indicator used is: credit to private sector (% of GDP). The ratio to GDP of the value of financial credits granted by financial intermediaries to private sectors is commonly used in the literature as it is mostly available for developing countries over a long period time. By excluding financial credit to the public sector, it has the advantage of channelling funds (financial resources) to productive agents and perhaps to the poor (Jeanneney and Kpodar, 2008). The measure of poverty levels used in the study is: Poverty headcount ratio at \$1.90 a day (2011 PPP) (% of population) - % of the population living on less than \$1.90 a day at 2011 international prices). This is the most widely used measure of poverty level. For instance, Osemene (2005); Akpan and Orok, (2009); kale, (2012) among others used poverty headcount ratio in their respective studies.

The significance of economic growth to the attainment of the goal of poverty alleviation is widely advocated in the literature (Nafziger, 2006; Ravallion and Chen, 1997; Deininger and Squire, 1998). Hence, GDP per capital is included in the model to reflect the influence of economic growth on poverty reduction. Following the study of Chakraborty (2010), it is assumed that the savings ratio (s) is affected by inflation (INF). And there

seems to be a consensus that inflation tends to cause risen poverty level (Easterly and Fischer, 2001). As such, inflation, consumer prices (annual %) is introduced in the model. While data on poverty headcount index were obtained from both Central Bank of Nigeria (CBN) Statistical Bulletin and World Development Indicators (2018 Edition), other data used were sourced from World Development Indicators (2018 Edition).

3.2 Methodology

Considerable theoretical evidence on the capital inflows - financial inclusion - poverty nexus demonstrated in the previous section informed the model formulation. Hence, the updated version of the model of Beck, et al. (2007); Meyer (2004); McKinnon (1973); Shaw (1973); Eller et al., 2005 is specified in a functional form as follows;

$$POV = f(CFLOW, FIN, FLW * FIN, GDP, INF)$$

In this model (Eq.1), *POV* is the measure of poverty. *CFLOW* represents the capital inflows. Financial development is represented by *FIN*. *FLW * FIN* indicates the interaction term of foreign capital inflows and financial deepening, while *GDP & INF* are the control variables: economic growth and inflation rate respectively.

Following the study's objective, Autoregressive Distributed Lag (ARDL) bounds test approach developed by Pesaran et al. (2001) is adopted. Other than other cointegration techniques, this approach is more appropriate given

its considerable advantages. For instance, like in the estimated model, it is mostly well applicable for small sample size. In addition, for the regressors, whether they are I (0), I (1) or mutually cointegrated, ARDL is tenably applicable. However, in case of I (2) and above, it is considered inappropriate. Hence, the ARDL model is specified as:

The difference operator is indicated by Δ ; is the white noise error term while represents the time period.

Two steps are involved for the test of the cointegration association between the dependent variable (ΔPOV) and the explanatory variables. First step, through ordinary least squares (OLS) technique, Eq. (2) is estimated. In the second step, by tracing the evidence (existence) of cointegration with the placement of restriction on the whole estimated coefficients of the lagged level variables in that they are set (equal) to zero; such that null hypothesis - against the alternative hypothesis - $H_0: \alpha = 0$. If the computed F - statistics is less than lower bound critical value, we do not reject the null hypothesis of no integration. However, if computed F - statistics is greater than upper bound critical value, we reject the null hypothesis; in this case, between the variables in the estimated model, steady state equilibrium is said to exist. Nonetheless, if the computed value is within the bound, the result will be termed as inconclusive. When the long-run correlation exists among

the variables, error correction representation is present. Hence, through the estimated equation, the Error Correction term is obtained and then, the short-run dynamics is assessed by estimating the Vector Error Correction Model (VECM) (Akinlo and Akinlo, 2009). In at least one direction, there is Granger causality as implied by the existence of cointegration, but it does not reveal the direction of causality (Engle and Granger, 1987). The causality relationship between and poverty reduction is, therefore, investigated by conducting the Granger causality test through the VECM framework; which can be expressed as;

The speed of adjustment to equilibrium and long-run relationship are captured by α . On the other hand, β represent the short-run dynamics of the model. Notably, there should be negative significant coefficients (β) of ΔY_{t-1} . It has been demonstrated that after a shock in the short-run, the negative sign of ECT coefficients implies that the dependent variable adjusts back to its equilibrium value (Akinlo and Akinlo, 2009; Fagbemi and Ajibike, 2018b). This shows the long run causal effect, and there is bi-directional causality between and poverty, if both (α) coefficients are statistically significant. However, unidirectional causality is said to exist if only one coefficient is negative and significant.

4. Empirical results and discussion

As shown in Table 1, the empirical analysis involved the test of unit roots in the models based

on Augmented Dickey -Fuller (ADF) and Phillips-Perron (PP) unit root test. The appropriateness of the techniques applied is justified as no variable found to be I(2) or above. This underpins the tenability of ARDL bounds tests approach in the study. In addition, following the bound test for ascertaining the cointegration relationship in Table 2, based on the computed F - statistics, there is strong evidence for the existence of long run cointegration among the variables across models suggesting the presence of long run relation between capital inflows, financial deepening (in view of their joint effect) and poverty reduction in Nigeria. In the study, the lying of CUSUM and CUSUMSQ within the critical boundaries, in Figure 1, buttresses the stability of the coefficients in the ARDL models. While a good number of diagnostics across models are well - satisfied (see Table 3), for robustness/ sensitivity test, as reported in Table 5, the Dynamic Least Squares (DOLS) for estimating the long - run cointegration relationship were also employed in the empirical study.

Table 3 presents both the long - run and short - run estimates between capital inflows, financial development and poverty reduction. Each model represents different regressions. In model (i), the joint effect of FDI and financial development (the ratio of credit to private sector) on poverty alleviation is examined. Regarding foreign

capital inflows and private credit, the empirical results are somewhat puzzling owing to their insignificance, although most variables exhibit the expected sign. As long-run parameters are most often formed the main focus, in the long run as given in Table 3, the two control variables (GDP per capita and inflation) throughout all models are significant. While inflation rate has positive correlation with the poverty measure (poverty headcount), GDP per capita has an adverse association with the poverty indicator, which implies that a rise in per capita GDP results to a decline in poverty. A persistent high inflation rate triggers a price hike and unstable

price, which can cause an inimical effect on people's welfare and expand poverty. Regarding inflation, real estate prices and stock prices will increase; on the other hand, the costs of housing, clothing and food will rise. This suggests that poor people will need to spend more to cope and survive. Although inflation has an impact on different income group, rich people can benefit more from their real estate and financial assets price increases and poor people lack those kind of assets; thus, they suffer more. Previous evidence by Yoshino et al. (2017); Easterly and Fischer (2001); Nafziger (2006) offer tenable ground and support for these empirical explanations.

Table 1
 Augmented Dickey Fuller (ADF) and Phillips-Perron (PP) unit root test results

Variable	Augmented Dickey-Fuller	Phillips-Perron
<i>GDP</i>		
Level	-0.02(0)	-0.40
First difference	-4.98(0)***	-4.98***
<i>Inflation</i>		
Level	-2.40(2)	-2.81
First difference	-6.06(1)***	-11.26***
<i>Private credit</i>		
Level	-3.37(1)**	-2.62
First difference	-5.18(2)***	-10.13***
<i>FDI</i>		
Level	-3.67(0)***	-3.64***
First difference	-5.50(0)***	-13.76***
<i>Portfolio Investment</i>		
Level	1.76(1)	-2.42
First difference	-3.43(2)**	-7.26***
<i>Remittances</i>		
Level	-1.96(0)	-1.96
First difference	-6.41(0)***	-6.74***
<i>Poverty headcount ratio</i>		
Level	-1.89(0)	-1.88
First difference	-6.25(0)***	-6.25***

** & *** indicated the level of significance at 5% and 1 % respectively. Figures in(.) represent lag length selected by AIC criterion. The PP length was selected by Newey-West Band Width.

Table 2
 Bounds F-tests for cointegration relationship
 *** represents statistical significance at 1% level.

Model	F-statistics	Level of Significance	Lower critical value		Upper critical value	
			Asymptotic (n=1000)	Finite Sample (n=40)	Asymptotic (n=1000)	Finite Sample (n=40)
Model (i) (1, 0, 2, 2, 1, 0, 2, 2)	5.91***					
Model (ii) (1, 0, 2, 2, 0, 2, 0)	6.18***	1%	2.96	3.64	4.26	5.46
Model (iii) (2, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1)	6.49***	5%	2.32	2.68	3.5	4.13
		10%	2.03	2.3	3.13	3.61

In examining the long run effect of the capital inflows (FDI, portfolio investment and remittances) and financial sector development on poverty alleviation, evidence in Table 3 reveals that in model (i) (FDI*Private credit) all variables are negative with the exemption of FDI. On the other hand, only portfolio investment is significant, while FDI and remittances are insignificant. Nonetheless, the interaction term of FDI and private credit is statistically significant in the long - run as well as in the short - run. In view of the positive nature and insignificance of FDI, which imply that many times FDI inflows have not enhanced welfare of the poor and have even adversely affected them. In this case, what seems to be the cause is that Nigeria is attracting FDI inflows which are mainly beneficial to the upper class or inducing employment generation for higher skilled workers in the country. In addition, they tend to be displacing local production that makes use of very low skilled labour thereby substantially provoking high poverty incidence. In another dimension, since there seems to be no right condition for foreign investors to operate, it might not induce the better side of FDI. Just like the domestic firms there is a tendency for them to get indulged in socially detrimental and corrupt activities. Hence, FDI inflows could not in any way result in lowering poverty

in Nigeria. This empirical assertion agrees with some previous studies (Agarwal and Atri, 2015; Akinmulegu, 2012; Ogunniyi and Igberu, 2014). Model (ii) and (iii) results are analogous to the one obtained in model (i) regarding FDI. Focusing on the portfolio investment, it can be seen from Table 3 (model (i)) that in the long, portfolio investment has a larger and significant effect on the reduction of poverty. A strong justification for this development could be linked to the prominent priority given to equity financing by most developing countries, since debt financing is viewed to be much more volatile. The national government of the respective countries has been encouraging inflows with higher rates of genuine fresh equity investment relative to debt. This move is making the economy less vulnerable to financial shocks and thereby dramatically contributing to socially induced welfare and decreasing poverty, as such offers options and means which ultimately allow people to create paths out of their poverty (OECD, 2012). Portfolio investment can reflect a significant substantial decrease in poverty given its larger magnitude compared to remittances and private credit. The results obtained for portfolio investment in model (ii) and (iii) also indicate a negative and significant effect.

Variable	Model (i) FDI*Private credit		Model (ii) Portfolio Inv*Private credit		Model (iii) Remittances*Private credit	
	Long run	Short run	Long run	Short run	Long run	Short run
Constant	-0.25*** [-5.51]	-0.83*** [-4.10]	0.63*** [3.02]	0.73*** [3.62]	0.12 [0.42]	0.99*** [5.14]
GDP	-1.21** [-3.60]	-0.01* [2.25]	-0.08* [1.56]	0.002 [0.20]	-0.48*** [-3.95]	-0.65* [-1.93]
Inflation	0.50*** [4.25]	0.008 [0.86]	0.08** [2.15]	0.04** [3.59]	0.09* [1.55]	0.01 [1.00]
Private credit	-0.42 [0.82]	0.14** [2.44]	-0.21 [-0.74]	0.004 [0.13]	-0.15** [-2.15]	0.12 [1.11]
FDI	3.35 [0.81]	0.07** [2.18]	0.04 [0.57]	0.006 [1.34]	0.06 [1.22]	-0.01** [-2.57]
Portfolio Inv	-1.07** [-2.24]	-0.03 [-0.33]	-5.90** [-2.30]	-0.03** [-3.18]	-4.36* [-1.72]	-0.33 [-0.21]
Remittances	-0.26 [-0.24]	-0.004 [-0.43]	-0.02** [-3.21]	-0.002* [-1.52]	-0.20 [-2.11]	-0.23* [1.58]
FDI*Private credit	-1.13** [-3.24]	-0.03** [-2.52]				
Portfolio Inv*Private credit			-2.88* [1.67]	0.41** [2.50]		
Remittances*Private credit					-0.11** [-2.80]	-0.04*** [-4.38]
ER (-1)		-0.05*** [-4.23]		-0.19** [-3.59]		-0.50*** [-5.12]
D.W		2.09		1.89		2.19
Ramsey reset test		0.52		0.77		0.92
Normality test		0.50		0.61		0.69
Serial correlation		0.16		0.36		0.53

*, ** & *** indicate statistical significance at 10%, 5% and 1% respectively, whilst figures in (-) are t-values.

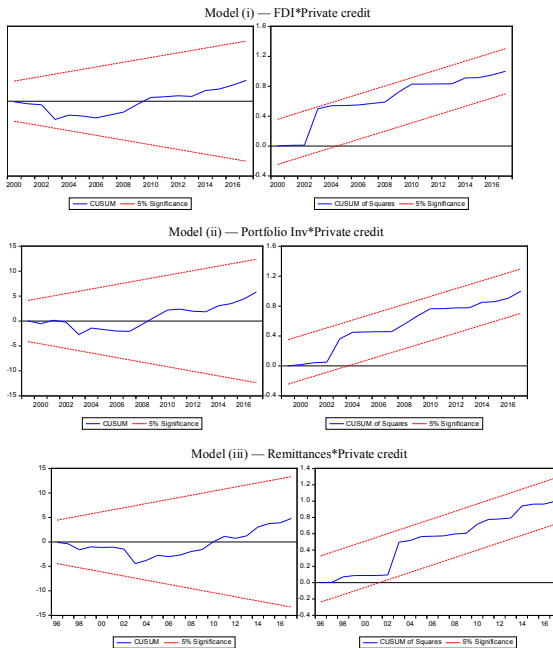


Figure 1: cusum (left) & cusumsq (right)

In contrast, as regards the insignificance of remittances in model (i), while remittances are distributed and given to people in developing countries, the larger proportion of those who often receive remittances could be from high-income (rich) families. This is because considerable amount involved for leaving domestic countries and work abroad, which can provoke an expansion of poverty levels. The empirical results buttress the view of Agarwal and Atri, (2015). Furthermore, in model (iii) remittances also found to be insignificant. However, it is statistically significant in model (ii). This could be as a result of decreasing transaction costs of sending remittances owing to improved technology or banking systems. Our findings in this respect marry up with the conclusion of Adams JR and Cuecuecha (2013); Odozi et al. (2010); Waheed et al. (2013) in that the severity and level of poverty are observed to be decreased by remittances. By and large, the interaction term across models has an adverse and significant effect on poverty headcount ratio. On the financial development, except in model (iii), private credit is statistically not significant in explaining poverty reduction. The pervasive dearth of financial infrastructure, including absence of terminals could warrant the financial exclusion of the poor. Regardless of how deep (develop) the financial sector is, if this case holds then the gains of financial development may

not get to the poor (Rewilak, 2017). This suggests that capital inflows and financial development could jointly strengthen the means to reinforcing structural economic transformation and effective industrial structure for broad-based growth and thereby the reduction of poverty. The study's findings consolidate the empirical assertion of Beck, et al. (2007); Demirg-Kunt et al. (2011). In the short-run, the obtained results, given the joint effect of financial development and capital inflows, are somewhat similar to those of long-run.

Furthermore, the short-run estimation results in Table 3, the results of the two control variables in the models are somewhat in line with those of long-run, as they exhibit similar signs except in model (ii) where the negative sign of GDP vanishes. Portfolio investment in model (i) and (iii) is also not statistically significant. These may be attributed to occasional financial shocks that might obscure the underlying correlation between portfolio investment, economic growth and poverty line. However, unlike in the long run, remittances are significant in model (iii) at 10% level, while FDI is found to be significant in model (i) and (iii), indicating a relatively improved condition for foreign investors to operate, which could bring out the better side of FDI. The estimated parameters of error-correction term (ER) has expected signs and statistically significant at 1% across models. When FDI is interacted with

private credit, the deviation of both financial development and capital inflows from the equilibrium values is deemed to be corrected by 5% in the following period. It will be corrected by 19% when portfolio investment is interacted with private credit, while for the interaction of remittances with private credit, correction is made by 50%. Thus, the existence of long - run equilibrium correlation among capital inflows, private credit, GDP per capita and inflation is empirically held.

The existence of cointegration in the models suggests that there is solid evidence of a long run correlation among the variables implying that at least from one direction there should be a case for Granger causality (Engle and Granger, 1987). Following Engle and Granger (1987), the presence of cointegration often comes with error correction representation indicating that the disequilibrium state in the cointegration relationship determines any change in the dependent variables, while changes in error correction term (ECT) and other explanatory variables are accounted for the disequilibrium state. Hence the estimation of Eq. (3) and (4) ascertains the possible long run and short run causal direction among the variables. In Table 4, the causal association between capital inflow, financial development and poverty reduction is presented. The findings (Table 4) reveal that across models the Wald test statistics is not significant for poverty headcount

under poverty reduction - led capital inflows*financial development, whereas it is statistically significant for the interaction term of capital inflows and financial development under capital inflows*financial development- led poverty reduction. These implies that the null hypothesis that both capital inflows and financial development do not Granger cause poverty reduction in the short run is rejected at 5% in support of capital inflows*financial development- led poverty reduction hypothesis. In contrast, in line with poverty reduction - led capital inflows*financial development, there is no empirical finding in favour of it. This suggests that the causal direction between capital inflows, financial development and poverty alleviation is unidirectional, which runs from both foreign capital inflows and financial deepening to poverty level. The findings stress that, in view of lagged dynamic terms, future changes in the level of poverty would be in part engendered by changes in both capital inflows and financial development in the short run. In addition, through the error correction term adjustment, there is a crucial joint influence of foreign capital inflows and financial development on poverty reduction. The implication of these findings is that the effective management of capital inflows and rapidly improved financial sector would enhance a decline in poverty level. The presence of the mechanism that adjusts the dis-equilibrium between capital inflows, financial development and

poverty measure is shown by the ECTs. While not the whole ECTs are significant, they possess appropriate signs. This suggests that the significant negative signs under capital inflows*financial development- led poverty reduction indeed offers robustness for the evidence of cointegration among the variables, although causality is unidirectional running from capital inflows and financial development to poverty reduction.

Table 4:
 Granger causality results based on VECM

Model	Lag	Capital inflows*fin dev- led poverty reduction			Poverty reduction – led Capital inflows*fin dev		
		Variable	Short run ^a	ECT ^b	Variable	Short run ^a	ECT ^b
Model (i)	1	FDI*Private credit	5.13**	-	Poverty headcount	1.07	-0.72 [-0.29]
				0.02*** [-5.55]			
		Inflation	6.28***		GDP	0.44	
		Private credit	4.04**		Inflation	4.01**	
		FDI	0.15				
		Portfolio Inv	0.03				
		Remittances	4.58**				
		GDP	1.57				
Model (ii)	1	Portfolio Inv *Private credit	4.21**	-	Poverty headcount	0.04	-1.27 [-1.27]
				0.006** [-3.38]			
		Inflation	2.55*		GDP	1.03	
		Private credit	0.24		Inflation	0.004	
		FDI	5.10**				
		Portfolio Inv	0.006				
		Remittances	4.58**				
		GDP	5.59***				
Model (iii)	1	Remittances*Private credit	4.01**	-	Poverty headcount	2.02	-0.15 [-0.19]
				0.15*** [-4.24]			
		Inflation	2.82*		GDP	3.05*	
		Private credit	2.5*		Inflation	2.69*	
		FDI	7.77***				
		Portfolio Inv	0.54				
		Remittances	0.06				
		GDP	4.43**				

(^a) The Wald statistic is reported. It tests the joint significance of the lagged values of the variables, which follow a χ^2 distribution. Figures (b) in parenthesis represent t-statistic. (***), (**) & (*) indicate the level of significance at 1%, 5% and 10% respectively.

Table 5
 Dynamic Least Squares (DOLS)

Variable	Model (i)	Model (ii)	Model (iii)
Constant	0.93*** [6.64]	0.91*** [8.76]	0.69*** [11.79]
GDP	-0.35*** [-3.00]	-0.34** [-2.93]	-0.47*** [-4.74]
Inflation	0.02** [0.34]	0.008** [2.58]	0.02 [0.82]
Private credit	-0.11 [-0.44]	-0.12 [-1.19]	-0.11* [-1.80]
FDI	0.03 [0.18]	0.02 [1.19]	0.04 [0.65]
Portfolio Inv	-3.85** [-2.65]	-4.39* [-1.63]	-2.06 [-1.33]
Remittances	-0.08 [-1.35]	-0.06* [-1.61]	-0.09* [-1.52]
FDI*Private credit	-0.003** [-2.89]		
Portfolio Inv*Private credit		-1.61* [-1.72]	
Remittances*Private credit			-0.06** [-2.67]

Figures in parentheses are t-values. (***), (**) & (*) indicate significance at 1%, 5% and 10% respectively.

Overall, with underpinning evidence in Table 5, GDP per capita is adversely related to poverty headcount, indicating that high growth rates would induce lower poverty levels in Nigeria. These findings are somewhat in tandem with the study of Rewilak (2017). Surprisingly, FDI is, by and large, positive and insignificant, suggesting that huge inflows of FDI to the country may further exacerbate poverty incidence. Given some points of view, this is a peculiar instance of more plausible conjecture that in a feeble institutional environment (where corrupt practices and rent-seeking behaviour are ubiquitous) like Nigeria, FDI inflows tend to go badly and ineffectively together with poor governance practices (Klein et al., 2001). Although not significant in all models, private credit, portfolio investment and remittances have negative signs. In all, this implies that a rise in any of them could lead to a decrease in poverty levels. Reasons for their insignificance have been evinced previously. More importantly, in a way, empirical evidence on portfolio investment clearly buttresses the assertion that equity investment is vividly the most efficient and effective form of equity in countries (including Nigeria) with weak corporate governance rules and practices. Finally, the poverty-alleviating effect of financial development could be enhanced if it coincides with rising inclusiveness and rates of capital inflows, and with the drive for improved economic

performance simultaneously.

5. Concluding remarks

This paper examines the joint effect of capital inflows and financial development on poverty reduction in Nigeria over the period of 1980 - 2017 using ARDL bound test and Granger causality test based on Vector Error Correction Model (VECM). As capital inflows involved three subcategories, the paper assesses all three in turn. The results reveal that FDI has a direct detrimental effect on poverty reduction in contrast to Bharadwaj (2014) and Ucal (2014). Lack of incentive and inclusive structures or socially conducive business climate may be attributable to this. On the other hand, remittances have no inimical effect on poverty alleviation, as the severity and level of poverty are observed to be decreased by remittances in the long run as well as in the short - run. In further findings, portfolio investment appears to have the greatest direct poverty-alleviating effect, underscoring the prominent priority given to equity financing by most developing countries. This may make these economies less vulnerable to financial shocks and thereby dramatically contributing to socially induced welfare and decreasing poverty. However, evidence indicates that poverty-alleviating channel may be blocked by increasingly fragile financial sector, which could inhibit the sector's capacity to extend credit to innovative small enterprises or individuals. Nonetheless, the poverty

reducing impact of the financial sector would be heightened via increasing its depth.

The interaction term of capital inflows and financial development reflects significant and substantial decrease in poverty headcount, underlining the view that capital inflows and financial development could jointly strengthen the means to reinforcing structural economic transformation and effective industrial structure for broad-based growth and thereby accentuating poverty-reducing effect. In another way, through empirical evidence, it could be posited that the indirect role of both capital inflows and financial deepening in poverty-reducing channel is substantial and increasingly crucial. Furthermore, results show that a rise in per capita GDP leads to a decline in poverty, while a persistently high inflation

rate triggers a price hike and unstable price, which can cause an inimical effect on people's welfare and poverty expansion.

As poverty incidence could be further exacerbated by the dearth of incentive and inclusive structures, in view of the analysis, overall, a number of policy implications could be offered. First, policy makers should initiate measures that could guarantee adequate financial infrastructure, including the presence of terminals which could warrant the financial inclusion of the poor. Second, there should be a drastic drive towards curbing heightened corrupt practices and strengthening corporate governance rules. Finally, ensuring that financial sector development coincides with rising inclusiveness and rates of capital inflows is critical for improved performance and poverty alleviation drive.

References

- Adams, R. H. (2004). Remittances and Poverty in Guatemala. World Bank Policy Research Working Paper, No. 3418.
- Adams, R. H. (2014). Evaluating the Economic Impact of International Remittances on Developing Countries Using Household Surveys: A literature review. *The Journal of Developing Studies*, 47(6), 809-828.
- Adams, R. H. and Cuecuecha, A. (2013). The Impact of Remittances on Investment and Poverty in Ghana. *World Development*, 50 (October), 24-40.
- Adams, R. H. and Page, J. (2005). Do International Migration and Remittances Reduce Poverty in Developing Countries? *World Development*, 33(10), 1645-1669.
- Adams, S. (2009). Foreign Direct Investment, Domestic Investment, and Economic Growth in Sub-Saharan Africa. *Journal of Policy Modelling*, 31(6), 939-949. doi:DOI: 10.1016/j.jpolmod.2009.03.003
- Agarwal, M. and Atri, P. (2015). Foreign Direct Investment and Poverty Reduction: India in Regional Context. Research and Information System for Developing Countries (RIS) Discussion Papers, www.ris.org.in.
- Akinlo, E. A. and Akinlo, O. O. (2009). Stock Market Development and Economic Growth: Evidence from Seven Sub-Sahara African Countries. *Journal of Economics and Business*, 61(2), 162-171.

- Akinmulegun, S.O. (2012). Foreign Direct Investment and Standard of Living in Nigeria. *Journal of Applied Finance and Banking*, No. 2(3).
- Akpan, P.L. and Orok, E.O. (2010). Public Sector Spending and Rural Poverty Reduction in South Eastern States of Nigeria. Retrieved from http://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract_id=1447928.
- Ali, M., Nishat, M. and Anwar, T. (2010). Do Foreign Inflows Benefit Pakistan Poor? *The Pakistan Development Review*, No. 48 (4).
- Antwi, S., Mills, E. and Zhao, X. (2013). Remittances and the Poverty Nexus: Evidence from Ghana. *International Journal of Academic Research in Economics and Management Sciences*, 2(1), 206-223. <http://www.hrmas.com/admin/pics/1550.pdf>.
- Anyanwu, J. C. and Erhijakpor, A. E.O. (2010). Do International Remittances Affect Poverty in Africa? *African Development Review*, 22(1), 51-91.
- Azam, M., Haseeb, M. and Samsudin, S. (2016). The Impact of Foreign Remittances on Poverty Alleviation: Global evidence. *Interdisciplinary Approach to Economics and Sociology*, 9(1), 264-21.
- Beck, T., Demirgüç-Kunt, A. and Levine, R. (2004). *Finance, Inequality and Poverty: Cross-Country Evidence*. National Bureau of Economic Research Working, No. 10979, Cambridge, MA. Available from <http://www.nber.org/papers/w10979>.
- Beck, T., Demirgüç-Kunt, A., and Peria, M. S. M. (2007). Reaching out: Access to and Use of Banking Services across Countries. *Journal of Financial Economics*, 85(1), 234-266.
- Beyene, B. M. (2014). The Effects of International Remittances on Poverty and Inequality in Ethiopia. *The Journal of Development Studies*, 50(10), 1380-1396.
- Bhandari, A.K. (2009). Access to Banking Services and Poverty Reduction: A State-Wise Assessment in India. *IZA Discussion Papers*, No. 4132. Available from <http://hdl.handle.net/10419/35638>.
- Bharadwaj, A. (2014). Reviving the Globalisation and Poverty Debate: Effects of Real and Financial Integration on the Developing World. *Advances in Economics and Business*, No. 2(1).
- Bhinda, N. and Martin, M. (2009). *Private Capital Flows to Low Income Countries: Dealing with Boom and Bust*. Debt Relief International, London.
- Brookings Institution (2018). *The Start of a New Poverty Narrative*. Brookings Institution, USA.
- Burgess, R. and Pande, R., (2005). Do Rural Banks Matter? Evidence from the Indian social Banking Experiment. *American Economic Review*, 95, 780 -795.
- Calvo, C.C. and Hernandez M.A. (2006). Foreign Direct Investment and Poverty in Latin America. *Leverhulme Centre for Research on Globalisation and Economic Policy*, University of Nottingham.
- Calvo, G., Liederman, L. and Reinhart, C.M., (1994). The Capital Inflows Problem: Concepts and Issues. *Contemporary Economic Policy*, Vol. 12, Issue 3, pp. 54-66.
- Central Bank of Nigeria (2013). *Statistical bulletin*. Abuja: CBN Publications, 23-44.
- Chakra, A. & Leon-Gonzalez (2012). The Impact of Remittance on Poverty and Inequality: A Micro-Simulation Study for Nepal. *GRIPS (National Graduate Institute for Policy Studies) Discussion Papers* 11-26.
- Chakraborty, I. (2010). Financial Development and Economic Growth in India: An Analysis of the Post-Reform Period. *South Asia Economic Journal*, 11(2): 287.
- Chor, H. P., Davin, L., Foley, C. F., Kalina, M., & Stanley, W. (2008). *Host Country Financial Development and MNC Activity*.
- Deininger, K. and Squire, L. (1998). New Ways of Looking at Old Issues. *Journal of Development Economics*, 57(2): 259-287.
- Demirgüç-Kunt, A., Córdova, E. L., Peria, M. S. M., and Woodruff, C. (2011). Remittances and Banking Sector Breadth and Depth: Evidence from Mexico. *Journal of Development Economics*, 95(2), 229-241.
- Donou-Adonsou, F. and Sylwester, K., (2016). Financial Development and Poverty Reduction in Developing Countries: New Evidence from Banks and Microfinance Institutions. *Review of Development Finance*. 6, 82-90.

- Dutt, A. (1997). The Pattern of Direct Foreign Investment and Economic Growth. *World Development*, Vol. 25, No. 11.
- Easterly, W. and Fischer, S. (2001). Inflation and the Poor. *Journal of Money, Credit and Banking*, 33(2): 160-178.
- Eller, M., Haiss, P.R. and Steiner, K. (200). Foreign Direct Investment in the Financial Sector: The Engine of Growth for Central and Eastern Europe? Vienna University of Economics and B.A., Europainstitut, WP, No. 69.
- Engle, R.F. and Granger, C.W.J. (1987). Cointegration and Error Correction: Representation, Estimation and Testing. *Econometrica*, 55: 251-276.
- Fagbemi, F. and Ajibike, J.O. (2018b). West African Emerging Economies: Comparative Insights on Ghana's and Nigeria's Stock Market Development. *American Journal of Economics and Business Administration*, DOI: 10.3844/ajebasp.
- Farole, T. and Winkler, D. (2012). Foreign Firm Characteristics, Absorption Capacity and the Institutional Framework: The Role of Mediating Factors for Foreign Direct Investment Spillovers in Low and Middle Income Countries. Policy Research Working Paper 6265, World Bank, Washington, DC.
- Fowowe, A. and Abidoye, A. (2011). A quantitative Assessment of the Effect of Financial Development on Poverty in African Countries. Available from <http://www.csae.ox.ac.uk>.
- Fowowe, B. and Shuaibu, M.I. (2014). Is Foreign Direct Investment Good for the Poor? New Evidence from African Countries. *Eco Change Restruct*, No. 47.
- Geda, A., Shimeles, A. and Zerfu, D. (2006). Finance and Poverty in Ethiopia. Unu-Wider Research Paper No. 51, United Nations University, Helsinki, Finland.
- Giovannini, A. (1983). The Interest Elasticity of Savings in Developing Countries: The Existing Evidence. *World Development*, 11(7): 601-607.
- Gohou, G. and Soumare, I. (2012). Does Foreign Direct Investment Reduce Poverty in Africa and are there Regional Differences? *World Development*, No. 40(1).
- Goldberg, L. (2004). Financial-Sector FDI and Host Countries: New and Old Lessons. *Economic Policy Review*, Federal Reserve Bank of New York, issue Mar, P 1-17.
- Gorg, H. and Greenaway, D. (2004). Much Ado about Nothing? Do Domestic Firms Really Benefit from Foreign Direct Investment? *The World Bank Research Observer*, No. 19(2).
- Gupta, S., Pattillo, C. and Wagh, S. (2009), Impact of Remittances on Poverty and Financial Development in Sub-Saharan Africa. *World Development*, 37(1), 104-115.
- Hatemi?J, A. and Uddin, G. S. (2014), On the Causal Nexus of Remittances and Poverty Reduction in Bangladesh. *Applied Economics*, 46(4), 374-382.
- Honohan, P. (2004). Financial Development, Growth and Poverty: How Close are the Links? Policy Research WP 3203. The World Bank
- Huang, C., Teng, K. and Tsai, P. (2010). Inward and Outward Foreign Direct Investment and Poverty Reduction: East Asia versus Latin America. *Review of World Economics*, No. 146 (4).
- Hulme, D. and Mosley, P. (1996). *Finance against Poverty*. Routledge, London.
- Israel, A.O. (2014). Impact of Foreign Direct Investment on Poverty Reduction in Nigeria. *Journal of Economics and Sustainable Development*, No. 5(20).
- Jeanneney, S. and Kpodar, K. (2011). Financial Development and Poverty Reduction: Can There be a Benefit without a Cost? *J. Dev. Stud.* 47,143 -163.
- Jeanneney, S.G. and Kpodar, K. (2008). Financial Development, Financial Instability and Poverty. CSAE WPS/2005-09, University of Auvergne.
- Kale, Y. (2012). The Nigeria Poverty Profile 2010 Report. Press Briefing by the Statistician General of the Federation/Chief Executive Officer, National Bureau of Statistics, Dr Yemi Kale at the Conference Room, 5th Floor, NBS Headquarters, Central Business District, Abuja on Monday, 13th February, 2012.
- Keynes, J.M. (1937). The Ex-ante Theory of the Rate of Interest. *Economic Journal*, December; reprinted in the *General Theory and after*, part II Defence and Development. London: Macmillan for the Royal Society. pp: 215-223.

Klein, M., Aaron, C. and Hadjimichael, B. (2001). Foreign Direct Investment and Poverty Reduction. OECD Global Forum on International Investment New Horizons and Policy Challenges for Foreign Direct Investment in the 21st Century, Mexico City, 26-27 November 2001.

Liu, X., Wang, C. and Wei, Y. (2009). Do Local Manufacturing Firms Benefit from Transactional Linkages with Multinational Enterprises in China? *Journal International Business Studies*, No. 40 (7).

Magombeyi, M.T. and Odhiambo, N.M. (2017). Foreign Direct Investment and Poverty Reduction. *Comparative Economic Research*, Vol. 20, No. 2.

Mahmood, H. and Chaudhary, A.R. (2012). A Contribution of Foreign Direct Investment in Poverty Reduction in Pakistan. *Middle East Journal of Scientific Research*, No. 12(2).

McKay, A. and Deshingkar, P. (2014). Internal Remittances and Poverty: Further Evidence from Africa and Asia. *Migrating out of poverty Research Programme Consortium*, WP 12.

McKinnon, R.I. (1973). *Money and Capital in Economic Development*, 1st Edn. Brookings Institution (Washington D.C, USA). ISBN-10: 0815756135. pp: 177.

Meyer, K.E. (2004). Perspectives on Multinational Enterprises in Emerging Economies. *Journal of International Business Studies*, No. 35(4).

Mookerjee, R. and Kalipioni, P. (2010). Availability of Financial Services and Income Inequality: the Evidence from Many Countries. *Emerg. Mark.* 11,404-408.

Nafziger, W.E. (2006). *Economic Development*. 4th Edn., The Edinburgh Building. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.

Narayan, P.K. and Narayan, S. (2005). Estimating Income and Price Elasticities of Imports for Fiji in a Cointegrating Framework. *Economic Modelling*, 22: 423-438.

Odhiambo, N.M. (2009). Is Financial Development a Spur to Poverty Reduction? Kenya's Experience. *International Journal of Social Economics*, 37(4): 41-53.

Odozi, J. C., Awoyemi, T. T. and Omonona, B. T. (2010). Household Poverty and Inequality: The Implication of Migrants' Remittances in Nigeria. *Journal of Economic Policy Reform*, 13(2), 191-199.

OECD (2002). *Foreign Direct Investment for Development: Maximizing Benefits, Minimizing Costs*. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, Paris.

OECD (2012). *Private Capital Flows: Foreign Direct Investment and Portfolio Investment*. OECD.

Ogunniyi, M.B. and Igberu, C.O. (2014). The Impact of Foreign Direct Investment on Poverty Reduction in Nigeria. *Journal of Economics and Sustainable Development*, No. 5(14).

Okpara, G.C. (2010). Microfinance Banks and Poverty Alleviation in Nigeria. *Journal of Sustainable Development in Africa*, Vol 12, No.6

Omorogbe, V.O and Ubeagbu, D.G. (2007). Foreign Direct Investment and Poverty Reduction in Nigeria. *Journal of Research in National Development*, Vol 5, No 2.

Osemene, O.F. (2005). Government Expenditure and Poverty Reduction in Nigeria. *Ilorin Journal of Business and Social Sciences*, 10 (1), 119-131.

Perez-Moreno, S. (2011). Financial Development and Poverty in Developing Countries: a Causal Analysis. *Empir. Econ.* 41, 57-80.

Pesaran, M.H., Shin, Y. and Smith, R. (2001). Bounds Testing Approaches to the Analysis of Level Relationship. *Journal Applied Econometrics*, 16: 289-326.

Qayyum, A. Javid, M. and Arif, U. (2008). Impact of Remittances on Economic Growth and Poverty: Evidence from Pakistan. *Munich Personal RePEc Archive Paper*, No. 222941.

Quartey, P. (2008). Financial Sector Development, Savings Mobilization and Poverty Reduction in Ghana. In B. Guha-Khasnobis and G. Mavrotas, eds., *Financial Development, Institutions, Growth and Poverty Reduction*, Palgrave Macmillan in Association with the Unu-wider. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Ravallion, M. and Chen, S. (1997). What can New Survey Data tell us about recent changes in Distribution and Poverty? *World Bank Economic Review*, 11(2): 357- 382.

Rewilak, J. (2017). The role of financial development in poverty reduction. *Review of Development Finance*, Vol. 7, 169-176

- Rodrik, D. and Subramaniam, A. (2008). Why Did Financial Liberalization Disappoint? IMF Staff Papers, International Monetary Fund, Washington DC.
- Serino, M. N. and Kim, D. (2011). How do International Remittances Affect Poverty in Developing Countries? *Journal of Economic Development*, 36(4), 17-40.
- Shamim, A., Azeem P. and Naqvi, M.A. (2014). Impact of Foreign Direct Investment on Poverty Reduction in Pakistan. *International Journal of Academic Research in Business and Social Sciences*, No 4(10).
- Shaw, E.S. (1973). *Financial deepening in economic development*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Siggel, E. (2010). Poverty Alleviation and Economic Reforms in India. *Progress in Development Studies*, 10(3), 247-259.
- Sikorsky, M.T. (1996). *Financial Liberalization in Developing Countries*. UK: Edward Elgar.
- Son, H. and Kakwani, N. (2006). Measuring the Impact of Price Changes on Poverty. Working Paper No. 33, International Poverty Centre, United Nations Development Programme, Brasilia.
- Soumare, I. (2015). Does Foreign Direct Investment Improve Welfare in North Africa? Africa Development Bank.
- Squalli, J. (2007). Electricity Consumption and Economic Growth: Bounds and Causality Analyses of OPEC Members. *Energy Economics*, 29: 1192-1205.
- Sumner, A. (2005). Is Foreign Direct Investment Good for the Poor? A Review and Stocktake, *Development in Practice*, No. 15 (3/4).
- Ucal, M.S. (2014). Panel Data Analysis of Foreign Direct Investment and Poverty from the Perspective of Developing Countries. *Social and Behavioral Science*, No. 109.
- UNCTAD (2005). *Economic Development in Africa: Rethinking the Role of Foreign Direct Investment*. United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, Geneva.
- UNCTAD (2018). *World Investment Report*. United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD), Geneva.
- Uttama, N.P., (2015). Foreign Direct Investment and Poverty Reduction Nexus in South East Asia: [in:] Silber J. *Poverty Reduction Policies and Practices in Developing Asia*.
- Vita, D.G. and A. Abbot, (2002). Are Saving and Investment Cointegrated? An ARDL Bounds Testing Approach. *Economics Letter*, 77: 293-299.
- Waheed, O. O., Timothy, A. T., Adebayo, S. M. and Ayodele, O. (2013). Effects of Remittances on Poverty among Rural Households in Nigeria. *European Journal of Sustainable Development*, 2(4), 263-284.
- Wang, J. and Blomstrom, M. (1992). Foreign Direct Investment and Technology Transfer: A Simple Model. *European Economic Review*, No. 36 (1).
- Wijnbergen, S. (1983). Credit Policy, Inflation and Growth in a Financially Repressed Economy. *Journal of Development Economics*, 13(1): 45-65.
- World Bank (2017). *Financial Inclusion Insights: Financial Inclusion, Key to Reducing Poverty*. World Bank, Washington, DC
- Wouterse, F. (2010). Remittances, Poverty, Inequality and Welfare: Evidence from the Central Plateau of Burkina Faso. *The Journal of Development Studies*, 46(4), 771-789.
- Yoshino, N., Taghizadeh-Hesary, F and Otsuka, M. (2017). International Remittances and Poverty Reduction: Evidence from Asian Developing Countries. *ADB Working Paper Series*, No. 759.
- Zaman, K., Khan, M.M. and Ahmad M. (2012). The Relationship between Foreign Direct Investment and Pro-Poor Growth Policies in Pakistan: The new interface Economic Modelling, No. 29.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 19, 2018., Accepted March 13, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

THE CONTRASTIVE ANALYSIS OF MODERN CHINESE AND UZBEK VOWELS

Chi Daojia

Teacher Volunteer at Chinese language and Literature chair.
Tashkent State Institute of Oriental Studies



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-6>

Abstract: This paper adopts the four steps of "comparative analysis". First of all, it summarizes the Chinese language and Uzbek language and its Vowels. Chinese belongs to the "Sino-Tibetan language family" and is an isolated language. The Uzbek language belongs to the "Altaic language family" and is an adhesive language. There are 10 single vowels and 13 double vowels in Chinese language. There are 6 single vowels in Uzbek language, and one syllable contains one vowel, that is to say, several vowels have several syllables. Generally speaking, there are no double vowels in Uzbek language, and some of them are foreign words. Secondly, the single vowels in Chinese and Uzbek pronunciation are selected for comparative analysis. Then, the single vowels of Chinese and Uzbek are compared and analyzed from the aspects of "pronunciation part", "tongue position" and "lip shape". Through comparative analysis, it is found that there are 3 vowels with the same letters and the same pronunciation. 1 consonant with different letter but the same pronunciation. 1 vowels with the same letter and similar pronunciation. 1 vowels with different letter but the same pronunciation. Finally, based on the similarities and differences between the two vowels, the problems that Uzbek learners may have in Chinese consonant acquisition are predicted, and propose relevant teaching suggestions. The author believes that the "i, o, u" with the same pronunciation is generally not biased; the vowel "a" with similar pronunciation is easier to teach; the difficulty of teaching is "è, e, ü, -i(front), - i(back) and er".

Key words: Chinese language; Uzbek language; phonetics; Vowels ; comparative analysis

Recommended citation: Chi Daojia. THE CONTRASTIVE ANALYSIS OF MODERN CHINESE AND UZBEK VOWELS. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 79-87 (2019).

1. Introduction

The so-called "contrast analysis" refers to a method of linguistic analysis that compares the systems of the two languages to reveal their similarities and differences. In 1957, Lado pointed out in the book *Intercultural Linguistics* that projects that are similar to the learner's

mother tongue are easier for them, and it is difficult to learn from their different mother tongue projects (Liu Xun, 2000). Therefore, a systematic comparison of the two languages can predict where the learner may or may not have difficulty in learning the target language, thus adopting more effective second language

teaching measures in the teaching. The process of comparative analysis generally has four steps:

First, description. The target language and the learner's first language are described in detail and in detail as the basis for comparison. In this paper, the modern Chinese Vowels and Uzbek Vowels are described in detail.

Second, selection. Choose some meaningful language projects or structures to compare between the two languages. This paper selects the Vowels in Chinese and Uzbek for comparative analysis.

Third, comparison. Compare the selected language items or language structures in the two languages to find the same points and differences between the two languages. Through the comparative analysis of Vowels in Chinese and Uzbek, this paper aims to find out the similarities and differences of Vowels in the two languages.

Fourth, prediction. On the basis of comparison, predict the difficulties and errors that may occur in the learning of second language learners (Liu Wei 2000). This paper is based on the similarities and differences between the two languages of Chinese and Uzbek in the Vowels, and predicts the problems that Uzbek learners may have in their Chinese Vowels learning, and proposes relevant teaching suggestions.

At present, there are few studies on Uzbek in China. This paper is the first to make a comparative study

of Chinese and Uzbek Vowels. Since there is no such thing as "Yun Mu" in the Uzbek alphabet, the international common "consonant" is used to classify the phonetic alphabets of the two languages in this paper. In addition, the "International Phonetic Alphabet" is used for the phonetic analysis of the two languages.

2. Overview of Chinese and Uzbek Vowels

2.1 Overview of Chinese and its Vowels

Chinese, also known as Mandarin, belongs to the Sino-Tibetan language family. The earliest markers of Chinese pronunciation were "direct method" and "anti-tangential method", followed by "phonetic notation". Since the promulgation of the "Chinese Pinyin Scheme" in 1958, Latin letters have been used to mark Chinese pronunciation. The Chinese Vowels discussed in this paper are based on the phonetic alphabets in the Chinese Pinyin Scheme.

The vowel, also known as "Mu Yin", is opposite to the consonant. The vowel is a phoneme that is unimpeded by airflow through the mouth and pharynx during the pronunciation process (Huang Borong, Liao Xudong 2006: 20). There are 23 vowels in Chinese Pinyin, of which there are 10 single vowels and 13 double vowels. In addition, there are 16 special sounds for the combination of vowels and nasal Vowels. As shown in the following table:

Table 2-1: International Phonetic Alphabet of Consonants of Pinyin

No.	Vowel letter	International phonetic	No.	Vowel letter	International phonetic
single vowels					
1	a	[a]	6	u	[u]
2	o	[o]	7	ü	[y]
3	e	[e]or[ə]	8	-i (front)	[i]
4	ê	[e]	9	-i (back)	[ɨ]
5	i	[i]	10	er	[ər]
double vowels					
11	ai	[ai]	18	iou	[i_ou_]
12	ei	[ei]	19	ua	[u_ä_]
13	ao	[au]	20	uo	[u_o]
14	ou	[ou]	21	uai	[u_ai_]
15	ia	[i_ä_]	22	uei	[u_ei_]
16	ie	[i_e]	23	üe	[y_e_]
17	iao	[i_ä_]			

The vowels in Chinese Pinyin have the following classifications:

(1) The vowels in Chinese Pinyin can be divided into lingual vowels, apical vowels and curly vowels. There are 7 tongue vowels: a[a], o[o], e[e], ê[e], i[i], u[u], ü [y]; 2 apical vowels: -i [i] (pre-tongue of the tongue), -i [ɨ] (post-tongue of the tongue); curly vowels.: er[ər].

(2) According to the tongue position is front or back when pronunciation, it can be divided into: front vowel, central vowel, and post vowel. When the front vowel is pronounced, the tongue is naturally flat, and the tip of the tongue touches the lower teeth, such as i[i], ü[y], ê[e]. When the central vowel is pronounced, the middle of the tongue is raised and slightly nervous, and then the airflow flows out from the mouth, such as a[a], er[ər]. When the vowel is pronounced, the root of the tongue is swelled into the soft palate for pronunciation, such as e[e], u[u], o[o].

(3) According to the roundness of the lip shape when pronounced, it can be divided into: round lip vowel and non-round lip vowel. When the round vowel is pronounced, the lordosis of the lips is round, such as o[□], u[u], ü[y]. When the vowel is not rounded, the shape of the lips is natural and flat, such as a[□], e[□], ê[□], i[i], er[ær].

(4) According to the level of tongue in pronunciation, it can be divided into: high vowel i[i], u[u], ü[y]; semi-high vowel e[□], er[ær]; semi-low vowel o[□], ê[□]; low vowel a[□].

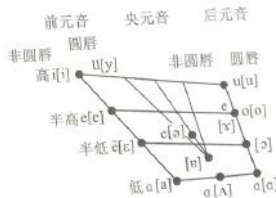


图2-1: 舌面元音舌位唇形图

There is a special combination of vowels and nasal Vowels in Chinese (called the nasal Vowels in Chinese Pinyin), which can be divided into front nasal and post nasal. Front nasal: an, en, in, un, ün, uan, uen, ian, in, ün; post nasal: ang, eng, ing, ong, uang, ueng, iang, iong.

Table 2-1: International Phonetic Alphabet of “vowels+ nasal Vowels”

No.	vowels+ nasal Vowels	International phonetic	No.	vowels+ nasal Vowels	International phonetic
1	an	[an]	9	uan	[u_ an]
2	en	[ən]	10	uen	[u_ ən]
3	ang	[□ŋ]	11	uang	[u_ □ŋ]
4	eng	[əŋ]	12	ueng	[u_ əŋ]
5	ian	[i_ æn]	13	ong	[□ŋ]
6	in	[in]	14	üan	[y_ □n]
7	iang	[i_ □ŋ]	15	ün	[yn]
8	ing	[iŋ]	16	iong	[i_ □□ŋ]

2.2 Overview of Uzbek and its Vowels

Uzbek (Latin letter O'zbek tili , Cyrillic: Ўзбек тили) belongs to the Altaic language and is the national and official language of Uzbekistan. Uzbek language has a history of more than 1,200 years of use. Ancient Uzbek is used in the Sogdian, Daxia and Huazizi models. Since the 8th century, Uzbek has been written in Arabic letters. In 1930 to 1940, the Latin alphabet was used. Since 1940, the Cyrillic alphabet was adopted due to the influence of the former Soviet Union. After independence, Uzbekistan began to promote the Latin alphabet in 1993 . The Uzbek language discussed in this article is written and marked in Latin.

There are six single vowels in Uzbek, one syllable contains one vowel, that is to say, several vowels have several syllables. For example, O'z be kis ton has four vowels, that is to say, it has four syllables O'z-be-kis-ton.

Table 2-3: International Phonetic Alphabet of Vowels of Uzbek

No.	Uzbek Vowel letter	International phonetic	Corresponding Chinese vowel
1	a	[a]	a
2	e	[ɛ]	ê
3	i	[i]	i
4	o	[ɔ]	o
5	u	[u]	u
6	o'	[o]	o (semi-high)

The author classifies the vowels in Uzbek as follows according to the classification of Chinese Pinyin vowels:

- (1) The vowels in Uzbek are all tongue vowels: a, e, i, o, u, o'.
- (2) According to the tongue position is front or back when pronunciation, it can be divided into: front-vowel a, e, i; post-vowel o, u, o'.

- (3) According to whether the vocal cords vibrate can be classified (D.Matkarimova, N.Mamatjonova 2015:6)
- ① clear consonants: p[p□], f[f], k[k□], h[h], x[x], s[s], sh[□], q[q]
 - ② voice consonants: m[m], b[b], v [v], d[d], t[t], n[n], l[l], z[z], j[d□], y [j], ch[t□], g[g], ng[n]
- g²[□], r[□r]
- (4) When the consonant pronunciation is pronounced, the air and unvoiced sounds are distributed.
- ① air supply tone: p[p□], t[t], k[k□], ch[t□]
 - ② non-aspirating sound: b[b], d[d], g[g], q[q], z[z], j[d□]

Table 2-4: Uzbek consonant pronunciation table

Method Location	Lips		Lip tooth		Tip of the tongue		Tip of the midrange tongue		Behind the tip of the tongue		Front of the midrange tongue		Post-tongue		Small tongue		guttural	
	unvoiced	voiced	unvoiced	voiced	unvoiced	voiced	unvoiced	voiced	unvoiced	voiced	unvoiced	voiced	unvoiced	voiced	unvoiced	voiced	unvoiced	
Nasal		m [m]							n [n]							ng [ŋ]		
Plosive	unaspirated		b [b]						d [d]							g [g]	q [q]	
	aspirated	p [p□]							t [t]							k [k□]		
Affricate	unaspirated															j [d□]		
	aspirated									ch [t□]								
Fricative			f [f]	v [v]	s [s]	z [z]			sh [□]							x [x]	g ² [□]	h [h]
Lateral									l [l]									
vibrato									r [□r]									
Semi-vowel																y [j]		

3. Contrastive analysis of Chinese and Uzbek consonants

Pinyin and Uzbek letters are written in Latin letters, so some letters are pronounced the same or similar. There are 22 consonant letters in Chinese phonetic alphabet and 23 consonant letters in Uzbek alphabet. According to the author's research, there are 8 consonants with the same letters and the same pronunciation. 1 consonant with different letter but the same pronunciation. 8 consonants with the same letters and similar pronunciations. 4 consonants with the same letters but the different pronunciation. 3 consonants are totally different. In addition, the Uzbek consonants v and y are the same and similar to the Chinese pinyin letters v and y, respectively. Among them, the Scheme for the Chinese Phonetic Alphabet stipulates that v is not used as the spelling of Chinese syllables, only as a spelling of foreign languages, minority languages and dialects. The details are as follows:

Table 3-1: Comparison of Uzbek and Chinese Consonants

No.	Uzbek consonants	International phonetic	Chinese Consonants	Remarks
Same pronunciation				
1	f	[f]	f	Same letters
2	k	[k]	k	
3	l	[l]	l	
4	m	[m]	m	
5	n	[n]	n	
6	p	[p]	p	
7	s	[s]	s	
8	ng	[ŋ]	ng	
9	v	[v]	/	Same as pinyin v
10	x	[x]	h	Different letters
Similar pronunciation				
11	b	[b]	b	Same letters
12	d	[d]	d	
13	g	[g]	g	
14	j	[d]	j	
15	t	[t]	t	
16	z	[z]	z	
17	sh	[ʃ]	sh	
18	ch	[tʃ]	ch	
19	y	[j]	/	Same as pinyin y
Different pronunciation				
20	h	[h]	/	Same letters
21	q	[q]	/	
22	r	[ʀ]	/	
23	/	[ʁ]	x	Different letters
24	g'	[gʰ]	/	
25	/	[tʃʰ]	zh	
26	/	[tʃʰ]	c	

From the pronunciation position, both lip sounds are the same. In lip-tooth pronunciation, there are v in Uzbek, but not in Chinese; in tip of the tongue pronunciation, there are c and zh in Chinese, but not in Uzbek; in tongue-front pronunciation, there are q[tʃʰ], x[x] in Chinese, but not in Uzbek; g[g], k[kh], ng[ŋ] in the posterior lingual sound are the same, but h[x] in Chinese is the lingual sound, and x[x] in Uzbek is a small tongue; there is no small tongue and guttural in Chinese.

According to the classification of obstacles in pronunciation methods, nasal and lateral sounds are the same, while the j pronunciation in Uzbek and Chinese is similar. In the plosive, Uzbek has q[q], Chinese does not; in the fricative sounds, Uzbek has v[v], h [h], g'[gʰ], Chinese does not, but Chinese has r [ʀ], x [ʁ], Uzbek does not; in the affricate sounds, Chinese has c [tʃʰ], zh [tʃʰ], q [tʃʰ], Uzbek no; Uzbek has vibrato r[ʀ] and semi-vowel y[j] (Similar to the Chinese pinyin letter y),but not in Chinese.

From the perspective of voicing consonants, there are 8 unvoiced consonants and 15 voiced consonants in Uzbek, 17 unvoiced consonants and 5 voiced consonants in Chinese. Among them, the letters "m, n, l, n g and r" are all voiced consonants in Chinese and Uzbek, but the letters "b, d, t, g and j" are unvoiced consonants in Chinese, while they are voiced consonants in Uzbek.

From the perspective of aspiration and non-aspiration, there are 4 aspiration sounds and 6 non-aspiration sounds in Uzbek, 6 aspiration sounds and 6 non-aspiration sounds in Chinese. Among them, the letters "p, t, K and ch" are aspirated sounds, while the letters "b, d, g, Z and j" are non-aspirated sounds; but the letters Q are non-aspirated sounds in Uzbek and aspirated sounds in Chinese.

4. Prediction and Suggestions of Chinese Consonants Teaching

Based on the contrastive analysis of consonants between Chinese and Uzbek, the following pronunciation teaching predictions and suggestions are put forward for Chinese learners whose mother tongue is Uzbek:

The consonants "f, k, l, m, n, p, s, ng" with the same letter and the same pronunciation are the easiest to teach, and students generally do not have errors.

It is easier to teach the eight consonants with similar pronunciation "b, d, g, j, t, z, sh, ch" with the same letters, but it is necessary to point out that the letters "b, d, t, g, j" are unvoiced consonants in Chinese and voiced consonants in Uzbek. In addition, the "z" vocal cords in Chinese do not need strong vibration, but in Uzbek is strong vibration. In addition, it should be emphasized with students that "sh" and "ch" in Chinese belong to tongue warping, while "sh" and "ch" in Uzbek are pronounced with flat tongue.

The difficulty of teaching is "h, q, x, r, zh, c", in which the pronunciations of "h[x], q[t□h], x[□], r[□]" are most easily affected by Uzbek language. "[h], [q], [x], [□r]" needs to be emphasized during teaching. "zh, c" does not have these two sounds in Uzbek, but teachers need to pay attention to the fact that students may make a flat voice, "c[□□]" may be influenced by English or Russian into "s[s]".

References:

Huang Borong, Liao Xudong 2011 Modern Chinese (updated five editions) [M] Beijing: Higher Education Press.

Liu Xun 2000 Introduction to Teaching Chinese as a Foreign Language [M] Beijing: Beijing Language and Culture University Press.

Shao Jingmin 2008 General Introduction to Modern Chinese (2nd Edition), Shanghai: Shanghai Education Press .

Cheng Tang 1996 Several problems in the teaching of Chinese as a foreign language [J], Language Teaching and Research, No.3.

Peng Chunying 2013 Russian students'Chinese phonetic learning errors analysis and teaching strategies [J] Master's Dissertation of Heilongjiang University.

Chinese Character Reform Committee 1958 Chinese Pinyin Program [S] "The Resolution of the Fifth Session of the First National People's Congress on Chinese Pinyin Program", p.2.

Matkarimova Dildora, Mamatjonova Nasibaxon 2015 O'zbek Tili[M] Tashkent. Toshkent Press.

N. Turniyozov, A. Rahimov 2006 O'zbek Tili[M] Tashkent. Samarqant Press.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 19, 2018., Accepted March 13, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**DETERMINANTS OF CRIME IN NIGERIA FROM
ECONOMIC AND SOCIOECONOMIC PERSPECTIVES:
A MACRO-LEVEL ANALYSIS**

Aduralere Opeyemi, OYELADE

University of Ibadan, Nigeria

E011962.oyelade@dlc.ui.edu.ng;adontopdominating@gmail.com



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-7>

Abstract: The study examined the determinants of crimes in Nigeria from economic and socioeconomic perspectives: A macro-level analysis using a time series data covering the period of 1990 to 2014. Both economic and socio-economic factors that determinant crime were included in the model. The economic factors include GDP per capita; male unemployment rate; female unemployment rate and poverty rate while the socioeconomic-demographic factors include higher education enrolment; urban population and rural population. The study embraces the autoregressive distributed lag (ARDL) model to empirically analyze the model since the variables were stationary at levels I(0) and first difference I(1). The empirical results in the long-run indicated that gross domestic product per capita and female unemployment rate was found to have a negative significant effect on crime rate in Nigeria while urban and rural population, male and female unemployment rate were found to have a positive significant effect on crime rate in Nigeria. Also, the results of the short-run indicated that gross domestic product per capita and higher education was found to have a negative significant effect on crime rate in Nigeria while urban population, male unemployment rate and poverty rate were found to have a positive significant effect on crime rate in Nigeria in the short-run. Therefore, for a country like Nigeria to reduce criminal activities in the country, there must be an increase in the income of the people. Also, government should invest more in education because it makes the people more rational and more risk averse and so it reduces the propensity to commit crimes. Therefore, higher education attainment will be the cure for criminal activities in Nigeria. Government should also create more jobs because high unemployment rates will compel people to commit crimes and this will increase crime rate in Nigeria. Lastly, there should be high budgetary provision towards poverty alleviation programme because higher poverty may lead to higher crimes rate due to depression or mental illness associated with being poor and this will decrease the rate of return of legal activities and more likely to increase return of illegal activities.

Keywords: Crime Rate, Economic Factor, Socioeconomic Factor, ARDL, Nigeria
JEL Classification: J10, K14, K42, I30

Recommended citation: Aduralere Opeyemi, DETERMINANTS OF CRIME IN NIGERIA FROM ECONOMIC AND SOCIOECONOMIC PERSPECTIVES: A MACRO-LEVEL ANALYSIS. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 88-105 (2019).

1. Introduction

Crime is an activity which is against the law and the fact that the linkage between criminal activities and the socio-economic development of the society is undeniable. It is an action or omission which constitutes an offence and is punishable by law and crime is an unlawful act punishable by a state or other authority. Crime is an offence against the value system of any given society. It is usually conceived as the outcome of a multiplicity of conditions, ranging from economic, social, cultural and family (Igbinedion and Ebomoyi, 2017). Crime is an act harmful not only to some individual but also to a community, society or the state that is a public wrong. Crimes always create distortions and discomfort in every society which results in the feelings of insecurity among people of a specific society (Khan et al., 2015). The costs and effects of crime vary among the various facets of the population and touch almost everyone in varying degrees (Igbinedion and Ebomoyi, 2017). Economists have attempted to know the reasons behind crime and this is called "economic of crime". There is no widely accepted definition of economic of crime. Economic of crime deals with the effect of incentives on criminal behavior and the possible measures to reduce crime. Economic of crimes is an illegal acts in which offenders' principal motivation appears to be economic gain (Freeman, 1996). This conceived of any offense in

which individuals or collectivities of people purposively act in an illegal manner in order to gain financial returns (e.g., robbery, drug selling, tax evasion, computer crime, and abuses of economic aid). Economics of crime deals with the effect of incentives on criminal behaviour and the possible measures to reduce crime. Economic models not only predict and explain the behaviour of criminals, but can also be used to describe the causes of crime and the dynamic interaction between criminals and anti-crime measures.

The two most mentioned economic and socioeconomic problems in recent times are crime and unemployment. In recent times, there has been a growing concern over the modestly increasing trends of violent crimes in Nigeria. For instance, murder which is a clear example of violent crimes was 1,629 in 1994. This number steadily increased to 2,120 in 2001 and climbed to a record high of 2,136 in 2003 (CLEEN Foundation, 2007). Such a phenomenal increase of over 75 percent between 1994 and 2003 is worrisome. In 1994 statistics had it that the total number of armed robbery was estimated to be 2,044. In 2002, it rose to 3,889 which was 52 percent increase in less than a decade. Also in 2005, 5,210 cases of armed robbery were reported but in 2004, it rose to 10,762. 10,771 cases of armed robbery were reported to the police in 2006; the number steadily increased to 14,400 in 2007 and 16,312 in 2011. This is a clear rise of over 43 percent in less than 5

years. In contrast however, 16,499 cases of armed robbery were reported to the police in 2012, while in 2013, the number of reported armed robbery cases to the police fell to 14,700 (a decline of 18 percent) (Omotor, 2010). Cases of crimes were on the average higher during the era of military years but it has been declining since the return to civil democracy in 1999. However, armed robbery cases were more during the latter period. The decline in theft and other forms of stealing which accounted for over 60 percent of crimes in Nigeria was sharper than other forms of crimes. For example, while a total of 69,341 cases of theft were reported in 1994, this fell to 31,340 in 2003. Armed robbery cases reported in 1999 were 2,044 and increased to 3,497 in 2003. Crime is not only armed robbery but of different types and they include murders, robbery, burglary, larceny theft, motor vehicle theft that includes arson, and victimless crimes. There are some other crimes, such as bank frauds, credit card frauds, tax evasions, insurance fraud, computer crimes, cellular phone crime etc. These types of crimes are called white-collar crimes committed by a person belonging to a high social status in the course of his occupation (Khanet al., 2015).

It is true that no part of the world is without crime. Both developed and developing countries have been victim of that inequity since the birth of human being. However, this issue has become severe in least developing countries (LDCs)

predominantly in Nigeria. The mass size of crimes has been meticulous due to the high unemployment, the soaring prices of food and raw materials, the increasing gap between the rich and the poor, the migration from scattered areas toward populated areas and the lack of education. Crime is not related to some specific group or community of people, but many well off and educated people are also seen to involve in the criminal behavior or activities (Khanet al., 2015). This research work is set to study both the economic and socioeconomic determinants of crime in Nigeria: A macro-level analysis.

2. Stylized Facts on the Trend of Crime Rate in Nigeria

Table 1 gives some crime indicators in Nigeria viz assault, murder, smuggling, stealing, armed robbery, sex offence, traffic offence, currency offence, Indian hemp, forgery, human trafficking and cultism. It was observed that assault fluctuated from its peak occurrence of 7,602 in 2007 to a minimum level of 5,491 in 2010. Except in 2011 where violent crimes like murder dwindle to 9,220, there has been a surge in its occurrence. This rose to a climax of 22,689 cases in 2010. In the same vein, smuggling activities in Nigeria has been on the rise from 6,359 reported cases in 2007 to 5,657 occurrence in 2010 but a drop to 3,933 magnitudes in 2011. Over the scope of this study, it could be seen that stealing happened in 46,740 instances in 2007 and fell to 41,496 in 2008, 34,958 in 2009, 23,868

times in 2010 and 11,504 occurrences in 2010. This is an indication that the rate of stealing has reduced drastically in Nigeria while robbery has been on the rise over time.

Likewise, armed robbery was at its peak in 2010 with 19,507 happenings and very low in 2011 with 9,193 occurrences. Sex offence was on the increase from 2007 to 2009 when it rose 4,162 cases but fell to 2,330 in 2010. Since the return of democracy in Nigeria, traffic offence has been reducing from 6,393 in 2007 to 2,206 in 2008 and later to 2,048 occurrences in 2010. However, it soars to 3,568 in 2011. Currency offence has been on the rise over time and the highest occurrences were recorded in 2011 with a figure of 3,143. Indian hemp

consumption has devastating effects on the health of recipients, thus the National Drug Law Enforcement Agency (NDLEA) prohibit its consumption. The crime of Indian hemp was 11,635 in 2007 and fell to 4,777 in 2008 after which it increases to 5,855 in 2009 and later to 8,578 in 2010. It however fell to 5,664 in 2011. Human trafficking has been fluctuating overtime and it was very low in 2008 and significantly high with 4,939 in 2007. Lastly, cultism or ritual offence was very low in 2008 (35 cases) and high in 2011 with a figure of 1,612. In the same vein, forgery had been fluctuating over the period considered with 2,616 cases in 2007 to 1,400 in 2008 and rise to 2,479 in 2009 while it fell to 1,920 in 2010 after which it increases to 2,946 in 2011.

Table 1: Trend of Crime Indicators in Nigeria for Some Selected Years

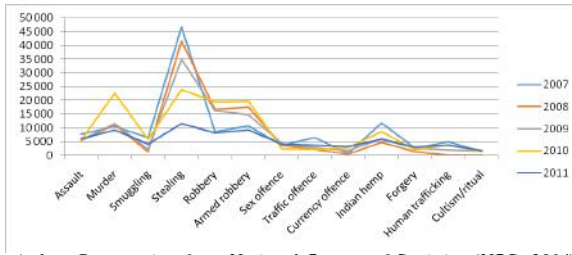
	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Assault	7,602	5,432	5,537	5,491	6,001
Murder	10,467	11,058	11,419	22,689	9,220
Smuggling	6,359	1,344	2,164	5,657	3,933
Stealing	46,740	41,496	34,958	23,868	11,504
Robbery	8,594	16,567	16,127	19,298	8,083
Armed robbery	10,774	17,517	14,682	19,507	9,193
Sex offence	3,542	3,562	4,162	2,330	4,008
Traffic offence	6,393	2,206	2,651	2,048	3,568
Currency offence	644	516	1,593	2,695	3,143
Indian hemp	11,635	4,777	5,855	8,578	5,664
Forgery	2,616	1,400	2,479	1,920	2,946
Human trafficking	4,939	35	1,890	3,815	3,533
Cultism/ritual	1,378	83	1,447	1,284	1,612

Source: Author Computation from National Bureau of Statistics (NBS, 2014)

Furthermore, it was observed from the Figure 1 below that all the crime cases considered has been

fluctuating over the period. Overtime, the entire crime rate has been exhibiting the same pattern.

Figure 1: Trend of Crime Indicators in Nigeria for Some Selected Years



Source: Author Computation from National Bureau of Statistics (NBS, 2014)

Also, the trend of crime classified by religion in Nigeria is given below in Table 2. It was observed that crime committed by people that practice Christianity has been on the increase up to 2010 but fell in 2011. Similarly, crime committed by Islamic faithful increases from 2007 to 2009 and dwindled from 2010 to 2011. Other religion that is not mentioned in this study occupied the next position after Islam but it has been fluctuating over time. Furthermore, traditional religion partakers' crime rate was on the increase from 2008 till the 2011. The crimes committed by this group were highest in 2007 (20,823). Both crimes committed by Christian and others religion faithful were very high in 2010. All these have some implications for the socio-economic and development of Nigeria.

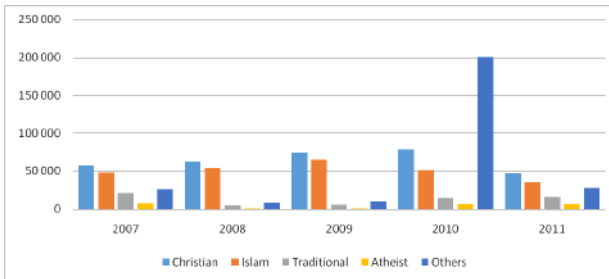
Table 2: Trend of Crime Classified by Religion in Nigeria

	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Christian	57,675	62,250	74,420	78,739	46,706
Islam	48,113	54,441	65,084	50,867	35,316
Traditional	20,823	4,931	5,894	14,707	16,270
Atheist	7,307	769	919	6,790	6,037
Others	25,500	8,393	10,034	200,778	27,203

Source: Author Computation from National Bureau of Statistics (NBS, 2014)

From the figure below, the crime committed by Christianity is the highest throughout the year and followed by Islamic and traditional faithful partakers. Also, since Atheist is not common in Nigeria, there are few partakers and as a result, they committed the lowest crime in Nigeria.

Figure 2: Trend of Crime Classified by Religion in Nigeria



Source: Author Computation from National Bureau of Statistics (NBS, 2014)

3. Literature Review

The swift increase in criminal activities in various parts of the world has generated the economics of crimes. There are enormous volume of theoretical and empirical literature that have explained the determinants of crimes in developed and developing countries. A number of studies have been carried out in order to know the determinants of crime rates. For example, Rath, (2012) examined socio-economic condition as a contributing factor for criminality of women prisoners in Odishaby using descriptive statistics for 217 respondents in the state. The result of the study indicated that criminality has touched almost all the sectors of the country. It has even not spared the bureaucrats, politicians, religious preachers and law executors. Hence, crime has become a major area of concern and it needs tremendous effort by the State agency to fight against such criminality and to revert the criminals back into the society streamlining them with social values and responsibilities. Also, Clear,

(2014) examined the effects of high imprisonment rates on communities: There are considerable methodological challenges in trying to link the consequences of concentrated incarceration to reduced public safety. Findings from studies are mixed yet, as empirical evidence grows of the negative collateral consequences of concentrated incarceration, the likelihood that concentrated incarceration is criminogenic in its effects on those communities becomes stronger. No well-established or proven strategy exists for combating the effects of concentrated incarceration on communities.

Also, Petersilia, (2000) examined when prisoners return to the community, political, economic, and social consequences. The study was done by distributing 200 questionnaires in the study area and in order to analyse the data, both the descriptive statistics and ordinary least technique were used. The result of the findings indicated that ironically, no-parole systems also

significantly undercut postrelease supervision. When parole boards have no authority to decide who will be released, they are compelled to supervise a parolee population consisting of more serious offenders and not one of their own choosing. Parole officers believe it is impossible to elicit cooperation from offenders when the offenders know they will be released, whether or not they comply with certain conditions. And because of prison crowding, some States (for example, Oregon and Washington) no longer allow parolees to be returned to prison for technical violations. Field supervision of parolees tends to be undervalued and, eventually, underfunded and understaffed. Sham et al., (2013) reviewed social structure, crime and quality of life as women travelers in Malaysian cities in a sample of 120 women in all the eight existing prison in Kisii town. The data from the research was analyzed using descriptive statistics through percentages and frequencies. Also, cross tabulation and ordinary least square (OLS) technique was used to test the level of significance. The study result indicated that whether social structure had an impact towards the crime occurrence in the main urban area in Malaysian city remains an open question. A further study on this variable will help to explore the situation by tapping on the right respondent to the questionnaire pertaining the travel safety issues among the women travelers.

In the same manner, Khan et al.,

(2015) examined the socio-economic determinants of crime in Pakistan: New evidence on an old debate from 1972 to 2011. The study made use of error-correction model (ECM) to show the speed of adjustment from short-run into long-run. The findings from the result indicated that positive relationship between crime rates and unemployment rate in Pakistan. Higher unemployment diminishes the rate of return of legal activities, and is more likely to increase the return of illegal activities. There was a significant negative relationship between the crime rates and the higher education. The study further assessed that GDP per capita leads to higher crime rates in the long-run but to lower rates in the short-run. Finally, there was a positive relationship between the crime rates and poverty in the long-run but there is a negative relationship in the short-run. Dara et al., (2015) examined tuberculosis control in prisons: current situation and research gaps using a sample 3,395 in the South-East Region of Nigeria. The statistical tool adopted in the study was the spearman rank order correlation coefficient. The study revealed that that despite being a serious cause of morbidity and mortality among incarcerated populations, many prison systems encounter a variety of challenges that hinder TB control. These include, but are not limited to, insufficient laboratory capacity and diagnostic tools, interrupted supply of medicines, weak integration between

civilian and prison TB services, inadequate infection control measures, and low policy priority for prison healthcare.

Furthermore, Murray et al., (2013) examined crime and violence in Brazil: Systematic review of time trends, prevalence rates and risk factors using a panel data. The findings from the study indicated that through a systematic review of the literature, it was identified 10 studies assessing the prevalence of self-reported offending in Brazil and 9 studies examining risk factors. Levels of self-reported offending seem quite high among school students in Brazil. Individual and family-level risk factors identified in Brazil are very similar to those found in high-income countries. Ghani, (2017) examined urban crime between Malaysia and Nigeria: A comparative study and the result indicated that criminal activities in urban areas have become more terrifying in many parts of the world. The last three decades have shown an aggravated toll of urban crimes across the globe which is not peculiar to either developing or developed countries. Both suffer the same providence. In any given urban areas where crime is prevalent, it creates social predicament to the society such as safety of property, lives are threaten, people will be living in fear in their respective living environment and generate low quality of life due to the havoc it creates socially and economically. As mentioned earlier, managing urban crime has become a basis of concern

and various controlling and preventive measures have to be applied to combat crimes. The best approach to crime management is primarily prevention strategy rather than waging war against criminal activities.

Anthony, (2013) examined the social factors affecting effective crime prevention and control in Nigeria. This study revealed that the security agencies are inadequately equipped and motivated, coupled with poverty, unemployment and the breakdown of family values among others have made crime prevention and control a difficult task. Paolo, (2008) investigated the socio-economic and demographic determinants of crime across Spanish provinces. Results indicate that lagged crime rate, clearance rate, urbanization rate and fraction of foreigners are positively correlated to crime rates. Property crimes are better explained by socio-economic variables (youth unemployment rate and education). Levitt and Miles, (2006) examined the economic contributions to the understanding of crime. The studies generally found that increases in police and greater incarceration lead to reduced crime. The death penalty, as currently used in the United States, does not appear to lower crime. We also review the evidence on three other crime-related debates in which economists have played a central role: racial profiling, concealed weapons laws, and the impact of legalized abortion. Buonanno and Leonida, (2005) examined non-

linearity between crime and education: Evidence from Italian regions. The empirical results suggested that crime was negatively correlated to education for low and medium levels of education, and that criminality displays persistence over time. However, as expected, crime is positively correlated to education for high levels of education, a result that seems to be driven by a white collar effect.

4. Theoretical Framework and Methodology

4.1. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical framework of this study is grounded on the standard rational choice economic model of crime by Nobel Prize laureate Gary Becker (1968). His work radically changed the way of thinking about criminal behaviour by demonstrating that not so much mental illness and social oppressions, but individual rationality, determines whether a person engages in criminal activities or not. Becker's rational criminal decides whether or not to commit crimes based on a cost-benefit analysis aimed at maximizing utility. A common understanding of crime is that the population can be divided into two groups: good guys and bad guys. In this view, the bad guys commit crime unless they are incapacitated and the good guys are reliably law abiding. The economic model of crime shifts the focus from character to the choices available to individuals. The choice of whether to commit crime is driven by the consequences, which differ among

individuals depending on the opportunities available to them. This perspective leads naturally to a presumption that deterrence works - crime rates will be inversely related to the likelihood and severity of punishment (Machin et al., 2011). Economists focus on choices and consequences and therefore, all potential criminals have a benefit of crime X_t , which includes both the financial and any expected psychological benefits of crime. An individual committing crime faces costs from law-enforcement agencies. The severity of the punishment including fines and jail time is one part of the total cost, and the other part is the probability of getting caught. Therefore, the costs will equal the probability of punishment $Pro(P_t)$ times the cost of punishment (C_{Pt}). Thus, the expected return from crime equal:

$$X_t - Pro(P_t)(C_{Pt}) \dots\dots\dots 1$$

Applying standard differentiation rule to equation (1), it implies that the number of criminals rises as X_t rises and declines as $Pro(P_t)$ or (C_{Pt}) rises. Thus, the individual decision to commit crime is conditional upon the following stipulation:

$$X_t - Pro(P_t)(C_{Pt}) > 0 \dots\dots\dots 2$$

4.2. Model Specification

The model for this study is an adapted model which captures crime as a function of both economic and socio-economic demographic factors (Khan et al., 2015; Lobon et al, 2017; Igbinedion and Ebomoyi, 2017 and Anwar et al., 2017). The

economic variables include GDP per capita; male unemployment rate; female unemployment rate and poverty rate because these variables will help to measure the impact of economic factors on crime rate in Nigeria while the socioeconomic-

demographic factors include higher education enrolment; urban population and rural population.

Based on the theoretical framework and the literature reviewed, the crime rate determinant model is given as:

$$CR_t = f(GDPPC_t, HEE_t, UP_t, RP_t, UM_t, UF_t \& POVR_t) \dots\dots\dots(3)$$

Where CR_t = Crime Rate (using annually aggregated number of reported crime incidence cases)

GDPPC_t = GDP per capita, (using PPP constant 2011 international \$)

HEE_t = Higher Education Enrolment (number of persons)

UP_t = Urban Population (number of persons)

RP_t = Rural Population (number of persons)

UM_t = Unemployment Rate, Male (using % of male labour force modeled ILO estimate)

UF_t = Unemployment Rate, Female (using % of female labour force modeled ILO estimate)

POVR_t = Poverty Rate (using poverty headcount ratio at \$2 a day (PPP) % of population)

The linear regression of the double log model is given as equation (4) below

$$LNCR_t = \beta_0 + \beta_1 LN GDPPC_t + \beta_2 LN HEE_t + \beta_3 LN UP_t + \beta_4 LN RP_t + \beta_5 UM_t + \beta_6 UF_t + \beta_7 POVR_t + e_t \dots\dots\dots(4)$$

The a priori expectation is given as.

$$\frac{dCR}{dGDPPC} < 0; \frac{dCR}{dHEE} < 0; \frac{dCR}{dUP} > 0; \frac{dCR}{dRP} > 0; \frac{dCR}{dUM} > 0; \frac{dCR}{dUF} > 0 \& \frac{dCR}{dPOVR} > 0$$

4.3. Estimation Techniques

The study embraces the autoregressive distributed lag (ARDL) model to empirically analyze the above model. According to Pesaran et al (2001), the ARDL co-integration technique (bound test), compared to other multivariate co-integration methods such as Johansen (1998) and Johansen and Juselius (1990), enables the co-integration relationship to be estimated by the ordinary least square (OLS) after determining the lag order of the model. Also, the model can accommodate regressors that are stationary at either levels I(0) or first difference I(1). In addition, the long-run and short-run parameters of the models can be simultaneously estimated (Pesaran et al., 2001).

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta LNCR_t = & \beta_0 + \beta_1 LNCR_{t-1} + \beta_2 LNGDPPC_{t-1} + \beta_3 LNHEE_{t-1} + \beta_4 LNUP_{t-1} + \beta_5 LNR_{t-1} \\ & + \beta_6 LNUM_{t-1} + \beta_7 UF_{t-1} + \beta_8 POVR_{t-1} \\ & + \sum_{i=1}^m \beta_{9i} \Delta GDPPC_{t-1} + \sum_{i=1}^m \beta_{10i} \Delta LNHEE_{t-1} + \sum_{i=1}^m \beta_{11i} \Delta LNUP_{t-1} + \sum_{i=1}^m \beta_{12i} \Delta LNR_{t-1} \\ & + \sum_{i=1}^m \beta_{13i} \Delta LNUM_{t-1} + \sum_{i=1}^m \beta_{14i} \Delta UF_{t-1} + \sum_{i=1}^m \beta_{15i} \Delta POVR_{t-1} + e_t \dots \dots \dots (5) \end{aligned}$$

The reparameterized result gives the short-run dynamics and long run relationship of the underlying variables. The long-run relationship of the underlying variables is detected through the F-statistic (Wald test). In this approach, long-run relationship of the series was said to be established when the F-statistic exceeds the critical value band. The major advantage of this approach lies in its identification of the co-integrating vectors where there are multiple co-integrating vectors. Thus, a joint null hypothesis involving coefficients on lagged levels of crime rate i.e. $H_0: \beta_{9i} = \beta_{10i} = \beta_{11i} = \beta_{12i} = \beta_{13i} = \beta_{14i} = \beta_{15i} = 0$ against the alternative $H_1: \beta_{9i} = \beta_{10i} = \beta_{11i} = \beta_{12i} = \beta_{13i} = \beta_{14i} = \beta_{15i} = 0$; is tested using the Wald or F-test statistic with critical values provided by Pesaran *et al.*, (2001). The F-test has non-standard distribution.

4.4. Data Sources

The data used for the research work are basically time series data covering 1990 to 2014, a period of twenty-five (25) years. The data for all the variables are obtained from National Bureau of Statistics (NBS, 2014), Central Bank of Nigeria's Statistical Bulletin (CBN, 2015) and World Bank's World Development Indicators (WDI, 2016).

5. Results and Discussions of Findings

5.1 Preliminary Analysis: Descriptive Statistics, Correlation Analysis, Unit Root Test and ARDL Bounds Test for Co-Integration

Table 3 reports the descriptive statistics and the purpose of descriptive statistics is to summarize the data which include the mean, median, maximum, minimum and standard deviation and other normality test. The crime rate was 195,898 on the average which means that crime rate in Nigeria was 195,898 yearly on the average. Crime rate has a minimum of 76,519 and a maximum value of 435,262 and it mean falls within its minimum and maximum. Furthermore, GDP per capita was \$3,747.6 per year which indicate a low figure which make crime rate to increase. Also, the higher education enrolment was 988,635 yearly and this means that there is an high rate in the enrolment in education in Nigeria with enough job which in turn lead to high rate in crime in Nigeria. In the same vein, urban population is 50,516,000 which is lower than rural population of 81,432,000 while unemployment among male is higher than that of female and poverty

rate in Nigeria was 59.62% which is very high to encourage more crime. Furthermore, all the variables follow within their minimum and maximum and crime rate, GDP per capita and urban population are positively skewed while higher education enrolment, rural population, male unemployment, female unemployment and poverty rate are negatively skewed and as a result of those that are negatively skewed, their median is higher than their mean. The Jarque-Bera statistic accepts the null hypothesis of normal distribution at the 10% level of significance for all the variables.

Table 3: Descriptive Statistics

	CR_t	$GDPPC_t$	HEE_t	UP_t	RP_t	UM_t	UF_t	$POVR_t$
Mean	195.898	3,747.6	988,635	50,516,000	81,432,000	7.632	7.356	59.616
Median	153.238	3,030	1,032,873	47,200,000	82,100,000	7.700	7.400	61.900
Maximum	435,262	5,640	1,701,123	83,300,000	94,200,000	8.000	7.500	90.230
Minimum	76,519	2,740	124,776	28,400,000	67,200,000	7.200	7.100	18.400
Std. Dev.	115.057	1,064.7	615,454	16,871,986	8,234,365	0.152	0.116	23.159
Skewness	1.241	0.522	-0.202	0.454	-0.154	-0.485	-0.889	-0.212
Kurtosis	2.996	1.596	1.360	1.979	1.835	4.806	2.940	1.777
Jarque-Bera	6.417	3.188	2.970	1.944	1.514	4.379	3.295	1.744
Probability	0.040	0.203	0.226	0.378	0.469	0.112	0.193	0.418
Observations	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	25

Source: Author's Computation

Note: ** imply 5% level of significance for normality using JB statistics

The degree and direction of association among the variables are shown in Table 4. Correlation analysis is use for two purpose which is to know the degree of linear association among variables and to see whether there is no multicollinearity among variables. A number of the signs tend to conform with a priori expectation while higher education enrolment do not conform. No serious problem of multicollinearity exists, as the Pairwise correlation coefficient for any of the variables does not exceed 0.80 (Gujarati, 2003).

Table 4: Correlation Matrix

	$LNCR_t$	$LNGDPPC_t$	$LNHEE_t$	$LNUP_t$	$LNRP_t$	UM_t	UF_t	$POVR_t$
$LNCR_t$	1							
$LNGDPPC_t$	-0.182	1						
$LNHEE_t$	0.234	0.691	1					
$LNUP_t$	0.182	0.198	0.799	1				
$LNRP_t$	0.299	0.684	0.188	0.390	1			
UM_t	0.687	0.297	0.375	0.571	0.657	1		
UF_t	0.336	0.376	0.181	0.513	0.572	0.368	1	
$POVR_t$	0.310	0.759	0.546	0.681	0.684	0.635	0.375	1

Source: Author's Computation

To examine the stationarity of the series and time series properties of the variables in the model, the unit root test was carried out using of

Augmented Dickey Fuller (ADF) test and it is presented in Table 5. The study tests for unit roots on the effect of economic and socioeconomic factors on crime rates in Nigeria and the ADF guarantee that the inference regarding the important issue of stationarity is unlikely driven by the choice of testing procedures used. The results revealed that the variables are integrated of order zero and one that is combination of I(0) and I(1) which called for autoregressive distributed lag (ARDI).

Table 5: Unit Root Test Result using Augmented Dickey Fuller (ADF)

Variable	Level		First Difference		Status
	ADF Critical Value	t*[p-value]	ADF Critical Value	t*[p-value]	
LNCR _t	-3.738	-1.873 [0.339]	-3.753	-4.288[0.003]*	I(1)
LNGDP PC _t	-3.738	-0.660 [0.988]	-3.753	-3.806 [0.009]*	I(1)
LNHEE _t	-3.753	-1.576 [0.478]	-3.753	-10.165[0.000]*	I(1)
LNUP _t	-3.769	-5.069 [0.000]*	-	-	I(0)
LNRP _t	-3.769	-6.849 [0.000]*	-	-	I(0)
UM _t	-2.992	-3.444 [0.019]**	-	-	I(0)
UF _t	-2.992	-3.423 [0.020]**	-	-	I(0)
POVR _t	-3.737	-1.961 [0.301]	-3.753	-7.353 [0.000]*	I(1)

Source: Author's Computation

Note: *, ** and *** imply 1%, 5% and 10% level of significance

Since the unit root test confirmed the combination of order zero and one that I(0) and I(1), the next step is ARDL bounds test for co-integration and result from the bounds test co-integration is presented in Table 6. The result revealed that computed F-Statistics for Wald test was 8.429. The value exceeds both the upper bounds and lower bounds critical values for all level of significance. Therefore, the statistics test yields evidence of long-run relationship among the variables at 1%, 2.5%, 5% and 10% levels of significance in Nigeria.

Table 6: Bounds Testing for Co-integration Analysis

Computed Wald F-statistic: 8.429; K = 5		
Bounds Level	Lower Bound	Upper Bound
10% critical bounds value	2.26	3.35
5% critical bounds value	2.62	3.79
2.5% critical bounds value	2.96	4.18
1% critical bounds value	3.41	4.68

Source: Author's Computation

Note: *, ** and *** imply 1%, 5% and 10% level of significance

5.2. Short-Run and Long-Run Effect of Economic and Socioeconomic Factors on Crime Rates in Nigeria

The short-run and long-run ARDL results for the effect of economic

and socioeconomic factors on crime rates in Nigeria are presented in Table 7. Since the unit root test confirmed the combination of order zero and one that $I(0)$ and $I(1)$ and the ARDL bounds test for co-integration yield evidence of long-run relationship among variables, the short-run and long-run effect of the variables were examined.

Table 7: Parsimonious Long-run and Short-run ARDL-ECM Results

Variable	Dependent Variable: Crime Rate (CR _t)	
	Long-run	Short-run
D(LNGDPPC _t)	-7.842 [0.000]*	-6.123 [0.000]*
D(LNGDPPC _t (-1))	-	-1.737 [0.111]
D(LNHEE _t)	-2.219 [0.847]	-0.297 [0.000]*
D(LNHEE _t (-1))	-	-0.255 [0.000]*
D(LNUP _t)	5.017 [0.006]*	2.130 [0.846]
D(LNUP _t (-1))	-	4.817 [0.024]**
D(LNRP _t)	3.833 [0.008]*	1.020 [0.101]
D(LNRP _t (-1))	-	1.474 [0.120]
D(UM _t)	1.761 [0.000]*	1.274 [0.000]*
D(UM _t (-1))	-	3.640 [0.000]*
D(UF _t)	-1.152 [0.052]***	0.226 [0.125]
D(UF _t (-1))	-	0.582 [0.785]
D(POVR _t)	1.523 [0.052]	1.840 [0.0725]*
D(POVR _t (-1))	-	0.001 [0.000]*
C	-4.338 [0.102]	-
ECT _t (-1)	-	-0.960 [0.000]*
R-Square	0.981	
Adj R-Square	0.965	
F-Statistics	60.785 [0.000]*	
Akaike info criterion (AIC)	23.100	
Schwarz criterion (SIC)	23.643	
Durbin-Watson Stat.	2.189	
Serial Correlation Test	3.273 [0.081]	
Normality Test	4.955 [0.084]	
ARCH Test	0.323 [0.728]	
Heteroskedasticity Test	0.490 [0.866]	
Ramsey RESET Test	5.758 [0.022]	

Source: Author's Computation

Note: *, ** and *** imply 1%, 5% and 10% level of significance

Empirical results indicate that there was along-run relationship among the crimes rates and some of the explanatory variables and coefficients of the variables have theoretical expected signs except for female unemployment which does not follow suit. Also, the results show that 1% increase in gross domestic product per capita will bring about 7.842% decrease in crime rates in Nigeria. This means that as per capita income of the people increase, tendency of committing crime reduces which is the normal scenario as expected. Therefore, for a country like Nigeria to reduce criminal activities in the country, there must be an increase in the income

of the people. In the same manner, 1% increase in higher education will bring about 2.219% decrease in crime rate indicating that higher education has the expected sign but insignificant in determine crime rate in Nigeria. As more education directly induces high earnings of individuals and may increase both the opportunity cost of crimes and the cost of time spent in criminal activity. Therefore, education makes the people more rational and more risk averse and so it reduces the propensity to commit crimes. This result indicates that people involved in criminal behaviour tends to be less educated and have pooreconomic background as compared to the non-criminals. Furthermore, urban and rural population has a positive significant effect on crime rate in Nigeria that is a 1% increase in both urban and rural population will bring about an increase of 5.017% and 3.833% respective increase in crime rate. This result indicates that more people tends to involved in criminal behaviour as the population go higher. High population without resource to cater for the population in term of job and the rest will result in more criminal activities in the long run. There was a divergence between male and female unemployment rate because male unemployment rate has a positive significant effect on crime rate while female unemployment rate has a negative significant effect on crime rate. Therefore, 1% increase in male unemployment rate will bring about

1.761% increase in crime rate in Nigeria while 1% increase in female unemployment rate will bring about 1.523% decrease in crime rate in Nigeria. This means that increase in male unemployment tend to increase criminal activities because must male in Nigeria are the breadwinner who have to look for ways of providing for the family whether through legal or illegal means but this is not application to female because they will be at the receiving hand.

The short-run economic and socioeconomic determinants of crimes rate in Nigeria was done through the help of error-correction model (ECM). The ECM result indicate that gross domestic product per capita and crimes rate has a negative significant relationship with each other. This means that 1% increase in gross domestic product per capita will bring about 6.123% decrease in crime rate. This concur with the long-run finding and it indicates that more per capita income reduces crime rate drastically in Nigeria. However, the empirical results show that there was a negative significant relationship between higher education and crimes rate in Nigeria both at current and lag period. Therefore, 1% increase in higher education will reduce crime rate by 0.297% and 0.255% at current and lag period. Therefore, higher education attainment is a cure for criminal activities in Nigeria. Urban population has a positive significant relationship with crime rate in lag period in Nigeria while rural population has the theoretical

expected sign but insignificant relationship with crime rate in Nigeria but at current and lag period. Therefore, 1% increase in urban population will increase crime rate in Nigeria by 4.817% at time goes on. Furthermore, the results on the short-run strongly support the existence of significant and positive relationship between the crimes rate and male unemployment at both current and lag period while female unemployment has positive but insignificant relationship with crime rate in Nigeria. Therefore, 1% increase in male unemployment will bring about 1.274% and 3.640% increase in crime rate in Nigeria. High unemployment rates may decrease the earning opportunities for the individuals which in turn compel them to commit crimes and this makes crime rate to increase. Also, there was a negative significant relationship between crimes rate and poverty in Nigeria at both current and lag period which is in support with theoretical findings. This means that 1% increase in poverty rate increase crime rate by 1.840% and 0.001% respectively. Therefore, higher poverty may lead to higher crimes rate due to depression or mental illness associated with being poor and this will decrease the rate of return of legal activities and more likely to increase return of illegal activities. Hence, poverty is one of the major contributing factors of high crimes in Nigeria. The coefficient of error-correction term was negative and significant and evaluates that all

short-run variables may converge on the long-run that is the speed of convergence was very high as 96% per year. It indicates that there was convergence which means that short-run coefficient values move to their equilibrium or stable path. Also, the value of adjusted R-squared of 96.5% shows that the model was relatively good as most of the variations are being explained by the explanatory variables and the model was free from any econometric problem through the Durbin-Watson statistics of 2.189 while the F-statistic of 60.785[0.000] indicates that the overall model was good. The results of diagnostic test statistics confirm the absence of serial correlation, heteroscedasticity, autoregressive conditional heteroscedasticity (ARCH) in the model and the model is normally distributed.

6. Conclusion

The swift increase in criminal activities in various parts of the world has generated the economics of crimes. Crimes always create distortions and discomfort in every society which results in the feelings of insecurity among people of a specific society. The study examined the determinants of crimes in Nigeria from economic and socioeconomic factors perspectives: A macro-level analysis using a time series data covering the period of 1990 to 2014. Both economic and socio-economic factors that determinant crime were included in the model. The economic factors include GDP per capita; male unemployment rate; female

unemployment rate and poverty rate while the socioeconomic-demographic factors include higher education enrolment; urban population and rural population. The study embraces the autoregressive distributed lag (ARDL) model to empirically analyze the model since the variables were stationary at levels $I(0)$ and first difference $I(1)$. The empirical results in the long-run indicated that gross domestic product per capita and female unemployment rate was found to have a negative significant effect on crime rate in Nigeria while urban and rural population, male and female unemployment rate were found to have a positive significant effect on crime rate in Nigeria. Also, the results of the short-run indicated that gross domestic product per capita and higher education was found to have a negative significant effect on crime rate in Nigeria while urban population, male unemployment rate and poverty rate were found to have a positive significant effect on

crime rate in Nigeria in the short-run. Therefore, for a country like Nigeria to reduce criminal activities in the country, there must be an increase in the income of the people. Also, government should invest more in education because it makes the people more rational and more risk averse and so it reduces the propensity to commit crimes. Therefore, higher education attainment will be the cure for criminal activities in Nigeria. Government should also create more jobs because high unemployment rates will compel people to commit crimes and this will increase crime rate in Nigeria. Lastly, there should be high budgetary provision towards poverty alleviation programme because higher poverty may lead to higher crime rate due to depression or mental illness associated with being poor and this will decrease the rate of return of legal activities and more likely to increase return of illegal activities.

References:

- Anthony, A. A.; (2013). Social Factors Affecting Effective Crime Prevention and Control in Nigeria. *International Journal of Applied Sociology*, 3(4): 71-75
- Becker, G.S.; (1968). Crime and Punishment: An Economic Approach. *Journal of Political Economy*, 76(2): 169 - 217.
- Buonanno, P. and Leonida, L.; (2005). Non-linearity between Crime and Education: Evidence from Italian Regions. *Social Problems*, 34: 187 - 211.
- Buonanno, P. and Montolio, D.; (2008). Identifying the Socioeconomic Determinants of Crime in Spanish Provinces. *International Review of Laws and Economics*, 28(2): 87 - 97.
- Clear, T. R.; (2014). The Effects of High Imprisonment Rates on Communities. *Crime and Justice*, 37(1): 97 - 132.
- CLEEN Foundation (2009): <http://www.cleen.org/about.html> 11-04-09
- Dara, M.; Colleen D. A.; Natalie V. S. V. M.; Haider A. A. A.; Dato C.; Hernan, R.; Rosella, C.; Giovanni, S.; Lia D.; Sarabjit, S. C. and Giovanni, B. M.; (2015). Tuberculosis control in prisons: current situation and research gaps. *International Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 32: 111-117.

Ehrlich, I.; (1973). Participation in Illegitimate Activities: A Theoretical and Empirical Investigation. *Journal of Political Economy*, 81(3): 521-565.

Freeman, R. B.; (1996). Why Do So Many Young American Men Commit Crimes and What Might We Do About It?. *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, 10(1): 25-42.

Ghani, Z. A.; (2017). A Comparative Study of Urban Crime between Malaysia and Nigeria. *Journal of Urban Management* xxx:xxx - xxx.

Gillani, M., Mahmood, S. Y., Rehman, H., & Rashid, A. (2008). Unemployment, Poverty, Inflation and Crime Nexus: Co-integration and Causality Analysis of Pakistan. *Pakistan Economic and Social Review*, 47(1): 79-98.

Haddad, A. and Moghadam, A. (2008). Socio-Economic Determinants of Crimes: A Cross-Sectional Study of Punjab Districts. *International Journal of Economics and Empirical Research*, 3(11), 550-560.

Iqbal, M. M. and Jalil, H. H.; (2010). Urbanization and crime: A case study of Pakistan. Presented at 26th Annual General Meeting of PSDE, Pakistan Institute of Development Economics, Islamabad, Pakistan.

Khan, N.; Ahmed, J.; Nawaz, M. and Zaman, K.; (2015). The Socio-Economic Determinants of Crime in Pakistan: New Evidence on an Old Debate. *Arab Economics and Business Journal*, 10: 73 - 81.

Levitt, S. D. and Miles, T. J.; (2006). Economic Contributions to the Understanding of Crime. *Annu. Rev. Law Soc. Sci.*, 2:147 - 164.

Machin, S.; Marie, O. and Vujić, S.; (2011). The Crime Reducing Effect of Education. *Economic Journal*, 121: 463- 484.

Murray, J. Cerqueira, D. R. D and Kahn, T.; (2013). Crime and Violence in Brazil: Systematic Review of Time Trends, Prevalence Rates and Risk Factors. *Aggression and Violent Behavior*, 18: 471 - 483.

Omotor, D. G.; (2009). Socio-Economic Determinants of Crime in Nigeria. *Pakistan Journal of Social Sciences*, 6(2): 54 - 59.

Omotor, D. G.; (2010). Demographic and Socio-Economic Determinants of Crimes in Nigeria (A Panel Data Analysis). *Journal of Applied Business and Economics*,

Petersilia, J.; (2000). When Prisoners Return to the Community: Political, Economic, and Social Consequences. *Papers from the Executive Sessions on Sentencing and Corrections*, No. 9

Rath, J. J.; (2012). Socio-Economic Condition as a Contributing Factor for Criminality of Women Prisoners in Odisha. *Odisha Review*, 18 - 29.

Sham, R.; Muhammad, Z. S. M. H., Hairul, N. I.; (2013). A Review of Social Structure, Crime and Quality Of Life as Women Travelers in Malaysian Cities. *Procedia - Social and Behavioral Sciences*, 101: 307 - 317.

Today, S. and Easterly, D.; (2006). Investment in Human Capital. *American Economic Review*. 1 - 17.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 19, 2018., Accepted March 13, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**SATIRE FOR REACTIONARY MODE IN THE STORY BY
A.P.CHEKHOV
"THE MAN IN THE CASE"**

Musaeva Feruza Abdubakievna
Teacher at Andijan state university



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-8>

Abstract: In this article it is researched that Belikov's figure who is the teacher of the Greek language as the main character of the novel entitled "Captive of cover" by A.P.Chekov and described the main character's gloomy expression "something wouldn't happen" which makes everybody fear.

Key words: satire story, funny story, political situation, dead languages.

Recommended citation: Musaeva Feruza Abdubakievna. SATIRE FOR REACTIONARY MODE IN THE STORY BY A.P.CHEKHOV "THE MAN IN THE CASE". 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 106-108 (2019).

A. P. Chekhov is rightly considered to be one of the best masters of short humorous stories not only in Russian, but also in world literature. Having started his literary career as a humorist and satirist, Chekhov at first did not give serious importance to his literary work, considering himself a future doctor (in 1879 he entered the medical faculty of Moscow University, which graduated in 1884).

He wrote small entertaining miniature stories, jokes, and anecdotes for humorous magazines. But together with this "handicraft" work Chekhov created such small stories, which seemed to be ordinary

funny miniatures, but the inner content differed by the striking depth and power of artistic generalization.

So, a young, aspiring writer became a master. At first Chekhov was languishing under the weight of the cruel requirements of the genre of a small story. In his letters we keep seeing complaints that he has to throw out the essence of his stories. It could have been not only dangerous, but also disastrous for the young talent, and Antosh Chekhonte (as the young man signed his stories) would have remained only a talented joker. But Chekhov managed to do something dangerous - useful for himself. He forced himself to "accept" the demands of

the genre, starting to persistently study the complex laws of the little story from within, to reveal its hidden possibilities.

A certain time of hard work has passed and the fever has reconciled itself to his creative will.

Chekhov learned how to convey the life of a man in a small story. And since the heroes of his stories were ordinary people, one of the many, Chekhov's little story conveys the flow of life itself. A small humorous story has risen to the height of an epic narrative. Chekhov became the creator of a new kind of literature, a small story, which includes, in terms of depth and completeness of the ideological and artistic content, a story and novel.

And the very thing that used to bring him suffering - the need to ruthlessly reduce, throw away, dirty - has now turned into a law of creativity for him. In his letters, statements, notes, appeared "in Suvorov's way" laconic and expressive sayings, formulas of art: "Briefness-sister of talent", "Writing talentedly, that is, briefly", "The art of writing is an art to reduce", "I can speak briefly about long things". The last formula, in our opinion, precisely defines the essence of Chekhov's extraordinary skill.

M. Bitter in the following words, he described the meaning of Chekhov's stories: "In each of Anton Pavlovich's humorous stories I hear a quiet, deep breath of a pure, truly human heart... Nobody understood as clearly and subtly as Anton Chekhov, the tragedy of the trifles

of life, nobody before him knew how to draw so ruthlessly and ruthlessly a shameful and dreary picture of their lives in the dull chaos of the bourgeois everyday life. [1.28]

In this heartfelt description of Chekhov's stories, Gorky defines both their social significance and one of the most important features of Chekhov's artistic originality: the combination, confluence in his works, the comic beginning with the dramatic and tragic. From his young age Chekhov has a keen sense of contradictions with reality. At first, he felt the comic side of these contradictions with particular acuteness; then he began to feel their tragic and dramatic side with even greater depth.

The main contradiction that tormented Chekhov was that his homeland, the most talented Russian people, called for a great historical life, was weary under the rule of "Unterev Prischebeevs", "people in a case", "chameleons" and other ridiculous, evil, insignificant filled the bourgeois and noble society.

In 1898, when he wrote "The Man in the Case", Chekhov was clear that it is necessary to fight the reaction, with political indifference, with ordinary people, political satire is necessary.

This is what the story "The Man in the Case" was all about.

The story is rightfully considered to be the pinnacle of Chekhov's satire both in content and form. Reflecting in bright and typical images the movement and struggle

in the wide circles of intellectuals of the late 19th century, this story is clearly against the reactionary camp. At the same time, the story "The Man in a Case" mobilized and summarized all the artistic means of satire used in earlier stories. The political orientation of the story determined, first of all, the choice of the main character: in the image of Belikov Chekhov as if summed up the observations that he made during his entire literary activity over the reactionary officials, servants of the tsarist regime.

What is Belikov's fundamental feature that underlies his character and explains his personal life and social role?

Finding out this trait, usually use the definition given by the narrator Burkin in the beginning of the story: "...this man had a constant and

irresistible desire to surround himself with a shell, to create himself ... a case that would have secluded him, would have protected him from external influences".

Indeed, a panic fear of living life, of everything that violates the established rules, habitual norms, annoying the idea that everything remains the same as it was, are manifested in every act of Belikov, in his entire life.

For Belikov the most essential thing is that his case was extremely active. This is how he differs from the simple peasant Mavra, whom Chekhov compares twice with Belikov, at the very beginning and at the very end of the story, and thus gives the background for the characterization of the main character. If anybody has the notion of "case" as an aspiration to privacy, to protect oneself.

References:

1. M.Gorky A.P.Chekhov. Collection of materials-M., 1951.p.28
2. A.P.Chekhov. Collected Op. in 12 volumes, Moscow, 1962.
3. A.P.Chekhov. Collected.Works.Vol. 8. M., 1962, pp. 280-293.
4. Berdnikov A.P.Chekhov. Ideological and creative search L., 1970.
5. Paperny Z. Chekhov's notebooks. M., 1976.
6. Ermilov V.A., A.P.Chekhov M., 1959.
7. Revyakin A.I. Creative work of A.P. Chekhov M., 1956.
8. Golubkov V.V. Skill of A.P.Chekhov M., 1958.
9. A. Chekhov Turkov and his time, 1987.
9. Bialyi G.A. Chekhov and Russian realism. M.1981.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**HUMAN RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT PRACTICES
AND ORGANISATIONAL COMMITMENT OF
TEACHERS IN GOVERNMENT AIDED SECONDARY
SCHOOLS IN WAKISO DISTRICT, UGANDA**

Wilson Mugizi

(wilsonmugizi@kiu.ac.ug)

Kampala International University Western Campus



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-9>

Abstract: This study analysed human resource development (HRD) practices and organisational commitment (OC) of teachers in Government Aided Secondary Schools in Wakiso District, Uganda. Particularly, the study analysed the relationship between performance appraisal, training and promotion and OC. The study used a sample of 336 secondary school teachers who responded to a self-administered questionnaire. Descriptive analysis, factor analyses, Cronbach alpha(?) tests and multiple regression were carried out. Descriptive analysis revealed that OC, performance appraisal and promotion were moderate while training offered was good. Factor analysis and Cronbach alpha (?) tests revealed that the items measuring HRD practices subscales were valid and reliable measures. Multiple regression analysis revealed that performance appraisal and promotion had a positive and significant relationship with OC. However, the relationship between training and OC was negative and insignificant. It was concluded that in the context of secondary schools in Uganda, OC was problematic, the current performance appraisal and promotion approaches were insufficient but training was sufficient. Therefore, it was recommended that the Ministry of Education, Science, Technology and Sports (MoESTS) in liaison with head teachers should improve the implementation of performance appraisal, however they should not over prioritise the provision of training to teachers, and the Education Service Commission which is the body responsible for the promotion of teachers should reform the promotional practices.

Key words: Human Resource Development Practices. Organisational Commitment. Performance Appraisal. Promotion. Training.

Recommended citation: Wilson Mugizi. HUMAN RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT PRACTICES AND ORGANISATIONAL COMMITMENT OF TEACHERS IN GOVERNMENT AIDED SECONDARY SCHOOLS IN WAKISO DISTRICT, UGANDA. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 109-127 (2019).

Introduction

Secondary education helps in the acquisition of knowledge, skills and values necessary for the exercising of responsible citizenship (Laurie, Nonoyama-Tarumi, McKeown & Hopkins, 2016). This is because secondary education promotes openness in individuals enabling them to become better citizens (Baumann & Winzar, 2016). Secondary school education is an effective means of equipping individuals with the ability to take knowledge-based decisions and develop democratic attitudes. It improves and strengthens the developmental capacities of individuals and communities. Acquisition of secondary education creates a safer, healthier and more prosperous society and enhances the living standards of individuals by changing their visions and perspectives (T?rkkahraman, 2012). Secondary education upgrades standards of living of individuals (Baumann & Winzar, 2016). Secondary school education learning opportunity is essential for combating poverty and creating economic mobility. In addition, secondary education links primary school education to higher education and connects school systems to labour markets. Indeed, its demand around the world has grown as more children enter and progress through the primary school system (Motivans, 2011). Recognising the importance of secondary education, secondary education systems in developing

countries especially Africa are under pressure to serve more students and to do so more effectively. There is a demand that secondary schools need to should do a better job of preparing students for adulthood making sure that they actually learn while they are in school and are equipped with skills they will need to become productive workers and full participants in their societies (Null, Cosentino, Sridharan & Meyer, 2017).

In pursuit of increasing secondary education, Uganda was one of the first countries in sub-Saharan Africa to undertake a policy of universal secondary education in 2007 (Adan & Orodho, ?2015). The government of Uganda declared that the goals of USE were to increase the primary to secondary school transition rate to 80 percent by the year 2015 by providing tuition-free secondary education and to increase equitable participation in quality secondary education (Huylebroeck & Titeca, 2015). However, despite the increase of secondary education, in Uganda complaints are high that students are not learning because teachers are showing low commitment to their jobs. About 15 percent of teachers do not turn up to teach their classes making the government of Uganda pay over Shillings 16 billion in monthly salaries to teachers who hardly show up at schools (Oduut, 2017). Many teachers have abandoned classes to ride boda-bodas (commercial motorcycles) or attend to their merchandise to earn extra income. A number of teachers

arrive at their respective schools as early as 8:00 am, sign in the attendance book and disappear against the Uganda Public Civil Service policy that prohibits public servants from engaging in any other employment during work hours (Kato, 2018). Therefore, secondary school teachers fail to make schemes of work, lesson plans and performing weekly duty negatively affecting teaching and learning (Ataike, 2014). The low commitment of teachers with no passion for their jobs affects their performance because they hardly take on extra roles in the schools and are less focused to their jobs. The teachers' experience reduction in their professional growth and professionalism hence they fail to create effective learning environments and increase learning potentials of their students (Altun, 2017; Carbonneau, Vallerand, Fernet & Guay, 2008). This study analysed factors affecting the commitment of teachers in government-aided secondary schools in Uganda. Particularly, the study analysed human resource development (HRD) practices and organisational commitment of teachers.

Background

Organisational Commitment.

Organisational commitment (OC) is a multidimensional concept comprising of affective, continuance and normative aspects. Affective commitment refers to an individual's emotional attachment to and involvement with an organisation;

continuance commitment is about the perceived costs of leaving an organisation; and normative commitment explains to the felt responsibility to support and remain a member of an organisation (Stinglhamber et al., 2015). Therefore, organisational commitment is the bond between the employee and the organisation such that the employee wants to continue serving the organisation and to help it achieve its objectives (Mugizi, Bakkabulindi & Bisaso, 2015). OC is important as far organisations such as secondary schools are concerned. OC leads to reduced employee turnover because committed employees are loyal to the organisation, share its values and identify with the goals of the organisation having little reason to want to leave it (?ulibrk, Deli?, Mitrovi? & ?ulibrk, 2018). OC leads to acceptance of organisational change because when an organisation engages in change initiatives, committed employees provide many benefits such as putting in extra effort to ensure that the change succeeds. In addition, during a period of change, committed employees serve as public relations representatives and go beyond the norm to assist the organisation to function effectively (Visagie & Steyn, 2011). Employees with commitment feelings do not frequently involve themselves in negative behaviour such as absenteeism, are more compatible and productive individuals with higher levels of satisfaction, loyalty

and responsibility (Mosadeghrad & Ferdosi, 2013). OC not only increases the success of an individual in a certain role but also encourages the individual to exhibit organisational citizenship behaviour, that is, to do many voluntary actions necessary for the organisation (Mugizi, Bakkabulindi & Bisaso, 2016a). In other words, OC enhances job performance in organisations such as schools.

Human Resource Development Practices

The term human resource development (HRD) is a three-component model involving training, education and development (Kumpikaite, 2008). Training concerns application of formal processes to impart knowledge and help people to acquire the skills necessary for them to perform their jobs satisfactorily (Armstrong, 2012). Training leads to leadership development, learning new work skills, socialisation encompassed in orienting new employees to the culture of an organisation, understanding job responsibilities and educating employees in regard to business ethics (Schraeder, 2009). Education is the measure of knowledge and skills (Barton, Armstrong, Preheim, Gelmon & Andrus, 2009). An individual's education is an indicator of a person's skill levels or productivity. Therefore, individuals with more education are likely to have greater in-depth, analytical knowledge (crystallised intelligence) as well (Mugizi et al., 2015).

Employee development pertains to skills, behaviours and abilities of an individual necessary for long-term personal effectiveness and contribution to the organisation's ability to remain competitive by providing high-quality goods and services (Ford, Kozlowski, Kraiger, Salas & Teachout, 2014). Employee development helps employees to acquire or sharpen capabilities required to perform various functions associated with their present or expected future roles and develop their general capabilities as individuals and discover and exploit their own inner potentials for their own and/ or organisational development processes (Rao & Krishna, 2009). Therefore, HRD describes individual development, career development, and organization development roles to achieve maximum productivity, quality, opportunity, and fulfillment for organisation members as they work to accomplish the goals of the organisation (Kumpikaite, 2008). HRD seek to develop people's knowledge, expertise, productivity and satisfaction, whether for personal or group/ team gain or for the benefit of an organisation, community, nation or ultimately the whole humanity (Werner & DeSimone, 2011). HRD practices refer to a set of systematic and planned activities designed by an organisation to provide its members with the opportunities to learn necessary skills to meet current and future job demands including performance appraisal, training and

promotion (Tizikara & Mugizi, 2017). The investigations of this study examined the influence of performance appraisal (PA), training and promotion on organisational commitment of teachers.

Literature Review

Theoretical Review

The Social Exchange Theory (SET) provides underpinnings for the relationship between HRD and organisational commitment. SET proposes that individuals are rational when making decisions and choose the option that is perceived to result in the highest net benefit given their preferences and constraints (Corcoran, 2013). Therefore, persons who give much to others try to get much from them, and persons that get much from others are under pressure to give much to them. This process works out at equilibrium to balance the exchanges. Hence, in an exchange relationship what one gives may be a cost, just as what one gets may be a reward (Mugizi et al., 2015). Therefore, SET posits that people's decisions to engage in an interaction process are based on cost-benefit analysis and the comparison of alternatives. People such as employees in organisations engage in an exchange process once they have judged the rewards and the costs and will enter relationships in which they can maximize benefits and minimize costs. The exchange will be engaged in if the resulting rewards are of value and the perceived costs do not exceed the perceived benefits (Nunkoo, 2016). Hence, in an organisation the social

exchange process begins when those in charge offer employees appealing resources that act as an exchange. Resources are exchanged through a process of reciprocity with the organisation offering to the employees who in turn reciprocate with good deeds or job attitudes. Thus, SET suggests that employee's job outcomes such as organisational commitment (OC) are a result of a series of sequential transactions between the employer and the employee (Cropanzano, Anthony, Daniels & Hall, 2017). Positive initiating actions such as providing organisational support in terms of activities like positive appraisal, training and promotion might be reciprocated with positive outcomes including OC (Mugizi et al., 2015). Therefore, guided by SET this paper analysed how HRD in terms of performance appraisal (PA), training and promotion as an exchange between schools and teachers influence OC of teachers.

Performance Appraisal and Organisational Commitment

Performance appraisal (PA) is the evaluation of an employee's job performance over the previous period by his/ her supervisor (Cappelli & Conyon, 2018). With PA an overall evaluation of work content, loads and volumes is carried out to establish what has been achieved during the reporting period and agree on objectives for the next period (Armstrong, 2010). PA offers feedback guidance in a complete system of performance management fostering employee

motivation contributing to increased commitment (Mugizi et al., 2015). Scholars (Farndale, Hope-Hailey & Kelliher, 2011; Gellatly, Hunter, Currie & Irving, 2009; Kuvaas, 2010; Morrow, 2011; Salleh, Amin, Muda & Halim, 2013; ?endo?du, Kocabacak & G?ven, 2013) have related PA and organisational commitment (OC). Farndale et al. (2011) in a survey on employees in finance, automotive, foodstuff and communication sectors in the UK reported a strong positive relationship between appraisal procedural justice and OC. Gellatly et al. (2009) examined the examined effect of PA as part of reward-oriented human resource management (HRM) practices on AC and CC of employees working in a variety of Canadian-based organisations. Their findings revealed that PA had an insignificant relationship with AC and anegative relationship with CC. Kuvaas (2010) in an analysis of PA of employees in a bank, a government department and a pharmaceutical industry in Norway found out that PA had positive relationship with the affective aspect of OC.

Morrow (2011) in a review of studies reported that previous PA conducted one month previously had no subsequent impact on AC among software development employees. On the other hand, prior performance ratings and perceived system knowledge were unrelated to AC. Nevertheless, higher levels of perceived system knowledge enhanced AC among banking

employees. Salleh et al. (2013) examined the relationship between PA and OC of public servants working in the federal departments of East, North and South of Peninsular zones Malaysia. The findings indicated that perceived fairness of PA influenced their OC. ?endo?du et al. (2013) analysed of the relationships between HRM practices and OC of employees in companies in the province of Konya in Turkey. The findings revealed a positive significant relationship between PA in terms of performance feedback and OC. However, the studies above reveal contextual and empirical gaps. With respect to the contextual gap, all the studies were done outside secondary schools and none in the context of the developing world of Africa. Still, while all the other studies revealed that a positive and significant relationship between PA and OC, Gellatly et al. (2009) did not and Morrow (2011) reported that the relationships varied depending on the type of organisation. These gaps made it imperative in the context of secondary schools in Uganda to seek to test the hypothesis that:

H1: There is a relationship between performance appraisal and organisational commitment.

Training and Organisational Commitment

Training is the planned intervention that is designed to equip employees with skills to enhance their job performance. Training is about the skills an employee must acquire to improve

the probability of achieving the organisation's overall goals and objectives (Truitt, 2011). Training involves the application of formal processes to impart knowledge and help people to acquire the skills necessary for them to perform their jobs satisfactorily (Armstrong, 2010). Since training builds employee capabilities, it should increase feelings of internal control (autonomy) and competence, which in turn lead to organisational commitment (OC) as there increase in one's identification, involvement, and emotional connection with the work and the organisation as an individual and the organisation as a whole (Gellatly et al., 2009). Different scholars (Bashir & Long, 2015; Mohyin, Dainty & Carrillo, 2012; Mugizi, Bakkabulindi & Bisaso, 2016b; Savaneviciene & Stankeviciute, 2011; ?endo?du et al., 2013) have related training and OC. Bashir and Long (2015) sought to identify the relationship between employees' training and employees' OC using the academic staff of one of a faculty in a public university in Malaysia. The findings indicated the existence of a positive significant relationship between the training and AC and NC but the relationship with CC was insignificant.

Mohyin et al. (2012) studied HRM strategies for managing OC using employees of small construction professional service firms in the UK. Their results from interviews, observation and document analysis indicated that

training was important in fostering OC. Mugizi et al. (2016) examined the extent to which human resource management (HRM) practices that included training were predictors of employment commitment (EC) of academic staff in universities in Uganda. The results showed that training was a positive significant predictor of EC. Savaneviciene and Stankeviciute (2011) analysed HRM practices linkage with OC of employees in a service sector organisation in Lithuania. Their analysis found out that skill-enhancing HRM practices (training) had a positive relationship with AC. However, ?endo?du et al. (2013) in an analysis of the relationship between HRM practices and OC revealed that training in job skills had a weak but significant relationship with OC. Silva and Dias (2016) evaluated the impact of organisational training on the degree of OC of employees in a private security organisation in Portugal. The results supported the existence of a direct and positive relationship between organisational training and OC. However, the studies above reveal that none of them was carried out in a secondary school and only one study by Mugizi et al. (2016b) was carried out in the context of Uganda but still in the context of universities with different dynamics from those of secondary schools. Still, while all the other studies suggested a positive significant relationship between training and OC, ?endo?du et al. (2013) reported a weak but significant relationship

with between training and OC. These gaps attracted this study in the context of secondary schools in Uganda to analyse whether:

H2: There is a relationship between training and organisational commitment.

Promotion and Organisational Commitment

Promotion is the movement of an employee from a lower level position to a higher level position accompanied by (usually) changes in duties, responsibilities, status and values (Rao & Krishna, 2009). Promotion increases job responsibility, scope and authority (Singh, Ragins & Tharenou, 2009). Promotion is an opportunity provided by the organisation to its employees and normally only those who have achieved the standard set by the organisation can be promoted. Organisations use promotions to reward highly productive workers, creating an incentive for workers to exert greater effort (Aminuddin & Yaacob, 2011). Workers value promotions because they carry an increase in job amenities such as a bigger office or a spending account and they are also an acknowledgment of work well done hence they are associated with ego boost. Some workers might enjoy the increase in authority over co-workers that often accompany a promotion (Kosteas, 2011). Scholars (e.g. Cicekli & Kabasakal, 2017; McCabe & Garavan, 2008; Scheible & Bastos, 2013; Weng, McElroy, Morrow & Liu, 2010) have analysed the relationship between promotion

and OC. Cicekli and Kabasakal (2017) sought to determine the relationship between promotion, development and recognition opportunities at work and organizational commitment using white-collar employees in the manufacturing and service companies in Turkey. The study established that promotion opportunities did not predict OC.

McCabe and Garavan (2008) carried out a study on drivers of commitment among nursing staff from two National Health Service (NHS) organisations in the UK. Analysis of interview results using the constant comparative approach indicated that development (promotion) was among the factors that positively influenced commitment. Mugizi et al. (2016b) in an examination of the influence of HRM practices on EC found out that promotion was a negative and insignificant predictor of EC. Scheible and Bastos (2013) examined the influence of HRM practices on OC of employees of an information technology company in Brazil. The study found a positive and highly significant correlation between promotion and OC. Weng et al. (2010) examined the relationship between for aspects of career growth namely; career goal progress, professional ability development, promotion speed and remuneration growth and OC of employees in companies operating in different cities of People's Republic of China. Their findings revealed that promotion had a

positive significant relationship with OC. However, contrary to the other studies, Cicekli and Kabasakal (2017) and Mugizi et al. (2016b) reporting from contexts other than secondary schools revealed that promotion did not predict OC. These gaps made it necessary for this study to further examine whether:

H3: There is a relationship between training and organisational commitment.

Research Methods

Sample and procedure

The respondents were 336 teachers in government-aided secondary schools in Wakiso District in Central Uganda. The questionnaire was completed by heads of departments and classroom teachers. The selection of the aforementioned respondents was based on the assumption that they directly experienced HRD practices because of their positions in the schools as teachers. The study employed simple random sampling a technique by which the respondents were selected at random and entirely by chance. This gave each individual equal chance of being included in the sample. This enabled collecting of data from a representative sample for generalisation of the findings. The researchers personally collected the data after briefing the respondents about the study and the questionnaire. The researchers sought consent from all the respondents to participate in the study and were promised anonymity and confidentiality.

Measures

Since the study adopted the positivist approach, data collection involved use of a self-administered questionnaire (SAQ). The SAQ was a close-ended questionnaire with question items based on a nominal scale with appropriate alternatives given for section A on demographic characteristics of the respondents and ordinal scale based on the five-point Likert truth scale (1= Very untrue, 2 = Untrue, 3 = Somewhat True, 4 = True and 5 = Very true) for sections B (independent variable) and C (Independent Variables). Section A on demographic characteristics comprised items on age categories, sex, marital status, education level attained, teaching experience and terms of employment. Section B comprised questions on organisational commitment (OC) measured using three dimensions that were affective commitment (AC), continuance commitment (CC) and normative commitment (NC). AC was measured using seven items (7 items ? = 0.910), CC five items (5 items ? = 0.850) and NC six items (6 items ? = 0.745) adopted from Mugizi, Bakkabulindi and Ssempebwa (2016). Section C comprised questions on HRD practices also measured using three dimensions that were performance appraisal, training and promotion. Performance appraisal (6 items ? = 0.894), training (7 items ? = 0.801) and promotion (5 items ? = 0.874) adopted from Mugizi and Bakkabulindi (2018). The SAQ based

measure was ideal for sampled respondents because they easily responded to the questions due to proficiency in the English Language adopted in the questionnaire.

Data Management and Analysis.

The data were processed by coding all the questionnaires, entering the data into the computer using the Statistical Package for Social Sciences (SPSS), summarising them using frequency tables and editing them to remove errors. Quantitative research methods were used to establish the validity and reliability of the data collection questionnaire. The validities of Organisational Commitment (OC) in terms of affective commitment (AC), continuance commitment (CC) and normative commitment (NC), and HRD practices which included performance appraisal, training and promotion were tested using Factor

Analysis. Reliability tests for the constructs were done using Cronbach Alpha (*a*). Data analysis involved descriptive, correlation and regression analyses. The Statistical Package for Social Sciences (SPSS) aided the analysis of data.

Results

Demographic Characteristics. The data on demographic characteristics of the respondents in the study in Table 1 indicate that the modal percentage (35.7%) of the teachers were aged 31-40 years, male (57.1%), married/ cohabiting (67.9%), had bachelors degree (72.3%), had been teaching for over 10 years (50.9%) and (66.1%) permanent. Variations in the frequency totals were as a result of missing data. The results on demographic characteristics of the teachers are presented in Table 1.

Table 1: Demographic Characteristics of Teachers

Item	Categories	Frequency	Percent
Age	Up to 30 years	84	25.0
	31-40 years	120	35.7
	41-50 years	108	32.1
	51 and above years	24	7.1
	Total	336	100.0
Gender	Male	192	57.1
	Female	144	42.9
	Total	336	100.0
Marital Status	Single never married before	93	27.7
	Married / cohabiting	228	67.9
	Single but ever married	15	4.5
	Total	336	100.0
Education level	Diploma in Education	36	10.8
	Bachelors in Education	243	73.0
	Post graduate Diploma in Education	21	6.3
	Masters	33	9.9
	Total	333	100.0
Working experience	Less than 1 year	27	8.0
	1 - 5 years	51	15.2
	6 - 10 years	87	25.9
	10 years and above	171	50.9
	Total	336	100.0
Terms of employment	Permanent	222	66.1
	Probation	51	15.2
	Part-time	36	10.7
	Contract	27	8.0
	Total	336	100.0

Organisational Commitment. Organisational Commitment (OC) was measured using three dimensions namely; affective (AC), continuance (CC) and normative commitment (NC). The results of each of the dimensions include

frequencies, percentages and means. For each dimension, factor loadings and Cronbach alpha (?) results are also presented showing the validity and reliability of the results. The results are as presented in Table 2.

Table 2: Means, Factors Loadings and Cronbach Alphas on Components of OC

Affective Commitment (AC)	Mean (Overall x =3.86)	Factors Loadings	Alpha (α)
I am very happy being a member of this school	4.17	0.806	0.836
I enjoy discussing this school with the people outside it	3.89	0.690	
I really feel as if this school's problems are my own	3.24	0.372	
I am deeply attached to this school	3.93	0.852	
I am part of the family of this school	3.96	0.782	
I feel emotionally attached to this school	3.77	0.750	
This school has a great deal of personal meaning for me	4.08	0.786	
Eigenvalue		3.781	
% variance		54.016	
Continuance Commitment (CC)	Mean (Overall x =3.07)	Factors Loadings	Alpha (α)
I am afraid of what might happen if I quit my job in this school without having another job lined up	3.19	0.723	0.874
It would be very hard for me to leave my job in this school right now, even if I wanted to	3.11	0.885	
Too much in my life would be disrupted if I decided to leave my job in this school now	3.00	0.890	
It would be too costly for me to leave this School now	2.81	0.803	
Right now, staying on my job in this school is a matter of necessity	3.23	0.774	
Eigenvalue		3.340	
% variance		66.809	
Normative Commitment (NC)	Mean (Overall x =3.22)	Factors Loadings	Alpha (α)
I think that people these days rarely move from job to job too often	2.77	0.550	0.771
I believe that a person must always be loyal to his or her school	4.16	0.704	
Jumping from this school to another seems unethical to me	3.18	0.779	

One of the major reasons I continue to work in this school is that I feel a sense of moral obligation to remain	3.63	0.775
Even if I got another offer of a better job elsewhere I would feel it is right to stay in this school	2.59	0.545
	3.02	0.713
Eigenvalue		3.534
% variance		58.899

The results in Table 2 show that the teachers rated their AC to be high (overall mean = 3.86 corresponding to true) but their CC and NC were moderate (overall mean = 3.07; mean = 3.22 corresponding to somewhat true) respectively. While the teachers were committal about their AC levels, they were non-committal about their CC and NC levels of OC. Factor Analysis indicated that the items on each of the three dimensions of OC could be reduced to only one factor, with respective eigenvalues of 3.534, 3.534 and 3.534 respectively. The respective three factors explained over 54%, 66%, and 58% of the joint variation in the respective items constituting a factor. With factor loadings that were at least 0.5 strong considered (Costello & Osborne, 2005), the results in Table 2 indicate that each item loaded highly on the

corresponding factor. Therefore, all the items were valid measures of the constructs (AC, CC & NC) they measured. The Cronbach alphas = 0.917, 0.816 and 0.798 for the respective components of OC were above the benchmark = 0.70 (Tavakol & Dennick, 2011). This suggests that the items for the three dimensions of OC that were used to collect data were reliable measures.

Human Resource Management Practices. Human Resource Management (HRD) Practices were also measured using three dimensions namely; performance appraisal, training and promotion. Also, the HRD results included frequencies, percentages and means. For each dimension, factor loadings and Cronbach alpha (*a*) results are presented indicating the validity and reliability of the results. The results are as presented in Table 3.

Table 3: Means, Factors Loadings and Cronbach Alphas on Components of HRD

Performance Appraisal	Mean (Overall x = 3.44)	Factors Loadings	Alpha (a)
In this school, I am appraised at regular intervals	3.69	0.519	0.810
In this school, my performance measured on the basis of objective results	3.62	0.782	
The appraisal system of this school advances my career	3.48	0.763	
In this school after every appraisal, I receive feedback about my performance	2.95	0.682	
The performance appraisal system of this School is fair	3.41	0.781	
The appraisal system of this school has a strong influence on my performance	3.43	0.813	
Eigenvalue		3.198	
% variance		53.293	
Training	Mean (Overall x = 3.66)	Factors Loadings	Alpha (a)
My school provides me with extensive training to enhance my job performance	3.64	0.813	0.880
In this school, I receive regular training in the different aspects of my job	3.44	0.862	
My training needs in this school are identified through a formal performance appraisal mechanism	3.02	0.753	
The training programmes available for me in this school are relevant to the changing needs of my job	3.58	0.765	
In this school, I have been encouraged to participate in seminars and workshops	4.25	0.755	
In this school, I have been assigned challenging jobs to evoke my skills	3.57	0.611	
The mentoring I have received in this school has been vital to my job performance	3.94	0.789	
Eigenvalue		4.122	
% variance		58.888	
Promotion	Mean (Overall x = 3.00)	Factors Loadings	Alpha (a)
I have a clear understanding of the promotion requirements of my job in this school	3.19	0.690	0.831
Management of this school has communicated the promotion policy to me very clearly	2.79	0.815	
There is an opportunity for me to get promoted in this School soon	2.81	0.753	
Promotion in this school is based on merit	3.27	0.750	
The promotional opportunities available to me in this school are satisfying	3.03	0.861	
Eigenvalue		3.011	
% variance		60.229	

The results in Table 3 show that the teachers rated performance appraisal in the schools to be rated moderate (overall mean = 3.44), training was good (overall mean = 3.66) and promotion was also moderate (overall mean = 3.00). The teachers were non-committal on HRD practices except for training. Factor Analysis indicated that the items on each of the three dimensions of OC could be reduced to only one factor, with respective

eigenvalues of 3.198, 4.122 and 3.011 respectively. The respective three factors explained over 53%, 58%, and 60% of the joint variation in the respective items constituting a factor. With factor loadings that were at least 0.5 strong considered, the results in Table 2 indicate that each item loaded highly on the corresponding factor. Therefore, all the items were valid measures of the constructs (performance appraisal, training & promotion) they measured. The Cronbach alphas = 0.810, 0.880 and 0.831 for the

respective components of EC were above the benchmark = 0.70. This suggests that the items for the three HRD practices that were used to collect data were reliable measures.

Regression Model for Predicting Employee Commitment using Recruitment and Selection. To establish whether the recruitment and selection predicted the employee commitment (EC) of the academic staff, EC was regressed on selection and recruitment. The pertinent results are in Table 4.

Table 4: Regression of Organisational Commitment on HRD practices

Predictor Variables	Standardised Coefficients Beta (β)	Significance (p)
Performance Appraisal	0.470	0.000
Training	-0.042	0.484
Promotion	0.234	0.000

Adjusted R² = 0.340
 F = 44.135, p = 0.000

The results in Table 4 show that performance appraisal, training and promotion explained 34.0% of the variation in OC (adjusted R² = 0.340). This means that 66.0% of the variation was a result of factors not considered in this study. The regression model was significant (F = 44.135, p = 0.000 < 0.05). Performance appraisal (β = 0.470, p = 0.000 > 0.05) and promotion (β = 0.483, p = 0.000 < 0.05) had a positive and significant influence on OC but training (β = -0.042, p = 0.484 < 0.05) had a negative and insignificant influence on OC. Therefore, the first and second hypotheses to the effect that there is a relationship between performance appraisal and OC, and there is a relationship between training and OC were accepted. However, the hypothesis to the effect that there is a relationship between training and OC was rejected. The magnitudes of the respective betas (β) suggested that performance appraisal had a moderate effect on OC while promotion had a weak effect on OC.

Discussion

The results of the study revealed that organisational commitment (OC) was moderate. This finding is consistent with the premise on which this study was based that commitment of teachers was low. The first hypothesis (H1) to the effect that there is a relationship between performance appraisal and OC was accepted. This finding concurs with the findings of previous scholars. For example, Farndale et al. (2011) reported a strong positive relationship between appraisal procedural justice and OC. Similarly, Kuvaas (2010) found out that PA had a positive relationship with the affective aspect of OC. Salleh et al. (2013) indicated that perceived fairness of PA influenced their OC. Further still, ?endo?du et al. (2013) revealed a positive significant relationship between PA in terms of performance feedback and OC. However, the finding was contrary to the finding by Gellatly et al. (2009) that PA had an insignificant relationship with AC and a negative relationship with CC. Similarly, Morrow (2011) reported that previous PA conducted one month previously had no subsequent impact on AC and prior performance ratings and perceived system knowledge were unrelated to AC although higher levels of perceived system knowledge enhanced AC. Therefore, with the findings concurring with a number of previous scholars, the results suggest that there is a relationship between performance appraisal and OC.

The second hypothesis (H2) to the effect that there is a relationship between training and OC was rejected. This finding was consistent with ?endo?du et al. (2013) who revealed that training in job skills had a weak but significant relationship with OC. Similarly, the finding was consistent with the finding by Bashir and Long (2015) on the aspect of CC which showed an insignificant relationship with training although with respect to the aspects of AC and NC the finding was inconsistent as the relationship was positive and significant. The finding was also inconsistent with Mohyin et al. (2012) who indicated that training was important in fostering OC. Similarly, Mugizi et al. (2016) reported that training was a positive significant predictor of EC. Also, Savaneviciene and Stankeviciute (2011) found out that skill-enhancing HRM practices (training) had a positive relationship with AC. Further, the results by Silva and Dias (2016) supported the existence of a direct and positive relationship between organisational training and OC. With the finding of the study inconsistent with the findings of most of the previous studies, the results suggest that in the context of secondary schools in Uganda, training had a limited effect on OC.

The third hypothesis (H3) to the effect that there is a relationship between promotion and OC was also accepted. This finding agrees with McCabe and Garavan (2008) promotion was among the factors

that positively influenced commitment. Likewise, Scheible and Bastos (2013) found a positive and highly significant correlation between promotion and OC. Also, Weng et al. (2010) revealed that promotion had a positive significant relationship with OC. However, the finding disagreed with the finding by Cicekli and Kabasakal (2017) that promotion opportunities did not predict OC. Also, Mugizi et al. (2016b) found out that promotion was a negative and insignificant predictor of EC. However, with the finding of the study agreeing with most of the previous scholars, promotion had an effect on OC although it was weak.

Conclusion

Deducing from the above discussion, it is concluded that in the context of secondary schools in Uganda, organisational commitment (OC) is problematic. Also, the current performance appraisal and promotion practices are insufficient hence correlating with the moderate OC. Training was sufficient hence failing to correlate with a low OC. Therefore, it is recommended that the Ministry of Education, Science, Technology

and Sports (MoESTS) in liaison with head teachers should improve the implementation of performance appraisal. Performance appraisal should advance the careers of the teachers, involve the provision of feedback about their performance, involve fairness and should have a strong influence on the performance of teachers. However, the MoESTS in conjunction with head teachers should however not over prioritise the provision of training as it is already high. With respect to promotion, the Education Service Commission which is the body responsible for the promotion of teachers should reform the promotional practices. The promotion of teachers should be based on requirements understandable to the teachers, the promotion policy is clearly communicated, there be opportunities for teachers to be promoted, based on merit and the promotional opportunities available should be satisfying. However, the investigations of this study were limited to secondary schools in one district in the developing context of Uganda. Therefore, future research should compare with schools in the developed countries.

References

- Adan, M. A., & Orodho, J. A. (2015). Constraints of implementing free secondary education in Mandera West Sub-County, Mandera County, Kenya. *Journal of Education and Practice*, 6(9), 102-111.
- Altun, M. (2017). The effects of teacher commitment on student achievement: A case study in Iraq. *International Journal of Academic Research in Business and Social Sciences*, 7(11), 417-426.
- Aminuddin, A., & Yaacob, M. A. (2011). The effects of recruitment and promotion practices on employees' job satisfaction in the local governments. *Voice of Academia*, 6(1), 11-22.

Armstrong, M. (2012). *Armstrong's Handbook of management and leadership: Developing effective people skills for better leadership and management* (3rd Ed). London, UK: Kogan Page Publishers.

Armstrong, M. (2010). *Armstrong's essential human resource management practice: A guide to people management*. London, UK: Kogan Page Limited.

Ataike, F. (2014). *School management and learner's attendance in universal secondary schools in Bombo Town Council, Luwero District* (Master's Dissertation, Islamic University in Uganda, Kampala, Uganda).

Barton, A. J., Armstrong, G., Preheim, G., Gelmon, S. B., & Andrus, L.V.C. (2009). A national Delphi to determine developmental progression of quality and safety competencies in nursing education. *Nursing Outlook*, 57(6), 313-322. doi: 10.1016/j.outlook.2009.08.003

Bashir, N., & Long, C.S. (2015). The relationship between training and organizational commitment among academicians in Malaysia. *Journal of Management Development*, 34(10), 1227-1245. Doi: 10.1108/JMD-01-2015-0008

Baumann, C., & Winzar, H. (2016). The role of secondary education in explaining competitiveness. *Asia Pacific Journal of Education*, 36(1), 13-30. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/02188791.2014.924387>

Cappelli, P., & Conyon, M. J. (2018). What Do Performance Appraisals Do? *Industrial and Labor Relations Review*, 71(1), 88-116. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0019793917698649>

Carbonneau, N., Vallerand, R. J., Fernet, C., & Guay, F. (2008). The role of passion for teaching in intrapersonal and interpersonal outcomes. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 100(4), 977- 987. doi: 10.1037/a0012545

Cicekli, E., & Kabasakal, H. (2017). The opportunity model of organizational commitment: Evidence from white-collar employees in Turkey. *International Journal of Manpower*, 38(2), 259-273. doi 10.1108/IJM-06-2015-0086

Corcoran, K. E. (2013). Divine exchanges: Applying social exchange theory to religious behavior. *Rationality and Society*, 25(3), 335-369. doi: 10.1177/1043463113492306

Costello, A. B., & Osborne, J. W. (2005). Best practices in exploratory factor analysis: Four recommendations for getting the most from your analysis. *Practical Assessment Research and Evaluation*, 10(7). Available at: <http://pareonline.net/getvn.asp?v=10&n=7>

Cropanzano, R., Anthony, E. L., Daniels, S. R., & Hall, A. V. (2017). Social exchange theory: A critical review with theoretical remedies. *Academy of Management Annals*, 11(1), 479-516. <http://dx.doi.org/10.5465/annals.2015.0099>

Culibrk, J., Deli?, M., Mitrovi?, S., & ?ulibrk, D. (2018). Job satisfaction, organisational commitment and job involvement: The mediating role of job involvement. *Frontiers in Psychology*, 9, 132. <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyg.2018.00132>

Ford, J. K., Kozlowski, S. W. J., Kraiger, K., Salas, E., & Teachout, M. S. (2014). *Improving training effectiveness in work organisations* (Ed.). New York, USA: Psychology Press.

Gellatly, I. R., Hunter, K. H., Currie, L. G., & Irving, P. G. (2009). HRM practices and organizational commitment profiles. *The International Journal of Human Resource Management*, 20(4), 869-884. doi: 10.1080/09585190902770794

Huylebroeck, L., & Titeca, K. (2015). Universal Secondary Education (USE) in Uganda: Blessing or curse? The impact of USE on educational attainment and performance. In *L'Afrique des grands lacs: annuaire 2014-2015/Reyntjens, F.[edit.]; et al.* (pp. 349-372).

Kato, J. (2018, January 1). Teachers in Karamoja dodge classes to ride bodas - study. *Daily Monitor*. Available at: www.monitor.co.ug

Kumpikaite, V. (2008). Human resource development in learning organization. *Journal of business economics and management*, 9(1), 25-31. <https://doi.org/10.3846/1611-1699.2008.9.25-31>

Laurie, R., Nonoyama-Tarumi, Y., McKeown, R., & Hopkins, C. (2016). Contributions of education for sustainable development (ESD) to quality education: A synthesis of research. *Journal of Education for Sustainable Development*, 10 (2), 226-242.

Mohylin, N.A., Dainty, A. R. J., & Carrillo, P. M. (2012, July). HRM strategies for managing employee commitment: A case study of small construction professional services firms. Working paper proceedings engineering project organisations conference Rheden, The Netherlands.

Mosadeghrad, AM, & Ferdosi, M.(2013).Leadership, job satisfaction and organisational commitment in healthcare sector: Proposing and testing a model. *Socio-Medical Subject*, 25 (2), 121-126. DOI: 10.5455/msm.2013.25.121-126

Motivans, A. (2011). Tackling the challenges of secondary education. Washington, DC, USA: UNESCO Institute for Statistics Brookings Institution.

Mugizi, W., & Bakkabulindi, F. E. K. (2018). Human resource management practices: Developing and testing an instrument in the context of academic staff in universities in Uganda. *Journal of Educational Review*, 10(1) 130-142.

Mugizi, W., Bakkabulindi, F. E. K., & Bisaso, R. (2015). A framework for the study of employee commitment. *Makerere Journal of Higher Education*, 7(2), 15-47. doi: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4314/majohe.v7i2.1>

Mugizi, W., Bakkabulindi, F. E. K., & Bisaso, R. (2016a). Are organisational characteristics antecedents of EC? Evidence using academic staff in private universities in Uganda. 14th International Conference on Private Higher Education in Africa, Addis Ababa, July 12-14.

Mugizi, W., Bakkabulindi, F. E. K., & Bisaso, R. (2016b). Human resource management practices as predictors of employee commitment of academic staff in universities in Uganda. In M. M. Dichaba & M. A. O. Sotayo (Eds.). *Towards excellence in educational practices* (pp. 360-379). South Africa International Conference on Education 19 - 21 September, Pretoria, South Africa.

Mugizi, W., Bakkabulindi, F. E. K., & Ssempebwa, J. (2016). Validity and reliability of Allen and Meyer's (1990) measure of employee commitment in the context of academic staff in universities in Uganda. *Journal of Sociology and Education in Africa*, 14(1), 1-9.

Null, C., Cosentino, C., Sridharan, S., & Meyer, L. (2017). Policies and programs to improve secondary education in developing countries. *Mathematica Policy Research*. Available at: <https://static1.squarespace.com/static/.../t/.../PSIPSE+Literature+Review.pdf>

Nunkoo, R. (2016). Toward a more comprehensive use of social exchange theory to study residents' attitudes to tourism. *Procedia Economics and Finance*, 39, 588-596. doi: 10.1016/S2212-5671(16)30303-3

Oduut, D. (2017, June 23). Govt paying Shs16 billion to absentee teachers monthly, says report. *PML Daily*. Available at: www.pmldaily.com/.../govt-paying-shs16-billion-to-absentee-teachers-monthly-says-r...

Rao, V. S. P., & Krishna, V. H. (2009). *Management: Text and cases*. New Delhi, India: Excel Books.

Rao, V. S. P., & Krishna, V. H. (2009). *Management: Text and cases*. New Delhi, India: Excel Books.

Salleh, M., Amin, A., Muda, S., & Halim, M. A. S. A. (2013). Fairness of performance appraisal and organizational commitment. *Asian Social Science*, 9(2), 121-128.

Savaneviciene, A., & Stankeviciute, Z. (2011). Human resource management practices linkage with organisational commitment and job satisfaction. *Economics and Management*, 17(1), 390-396.

Scheible, A. C. F., & Bastos, A. V. B. (2013). An examination of human resource management practices' influence on organisational commitment and entrenchment. *BAR, Rio de Janeiro*, 10(1), 57-76.

Schraeder, M. (2009). Leveraging potential benefits of augmentation in employee training. *Industrial and Commercial Training*, 41(3), 133-138. doi: 10.1108/00197850910950916.

Silva, R. E., & Dias, A. L. (2016). The role of organizational training on organizational commitment. The case of private security employees working remotely. *European Journal of Business and Social Sciences*, 5(08), 14-30.

Singh, R., Ragins, B. R., & Tharenou, P. (2009). Who gets a mentor? A longitudinal assessment of the rising star hypothesis. *Journal of Vocational Behaviour*, 74(1), 11-17. doi: 10.1016/j.jvb.2008.09.009

Stinglhamber, F., Marique, G., Caesens, G., Desmette, D., Hansenz, I., Hanin, D., & Bertrand, F. (2015). Employees' organisational identification and affective organisational commitment: An integrative approach. *PLoS one*, 10(4), e0123955. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0123955

Tavakol, M., & Dennick, R. (2011). Making sense of Cronbach's alpha. *International Journal of Medical Education*, 2, 53-55. doi: 10.5116/ijme.4dfb.8dfd

The relationship between human resource management practices and organizational commitment: A field study. *Procedia-Social and Behavioral Sciences*, 99, 818-827. doi: 10.1016/j.sbspro.2013.10.553

Tizikara, M. K., & Mugizi, W. (2017). Human resource development and employee job satisfaction in a public university in Uganda. *American Journal of Academic Research*, 2, A69-A84.

Truitt, D. L. (2011). The effect of training and development on employee attitude as it relates to training and work proficiency. *SAGE Open*. doi: 10.1177/2158244011433338

T?rkkahraman, M. (2012). The role of education in the societal development. *Journal of Educational and Instructional Studies in the World*, 2(4), 38-42.

Visagie, C. M., & Steyn, C. (2011). Organisational commitment and responses to planned organisational change: An exploratory study. *Southern African Business Review*, 15(3), 98-121.

Weng, Q., McElroy, J.C., Morrow, P.C., & Liu, R. (2010). The relationship between career growth and organizational commitment. *Journal of Vocational Behaviour*, 77(3), 391-400.

Werner, J. (2011). Teacher support for universal secondary education in Uganda (PhD Dissertation, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, USA).

Werner, J. M., & DeSimone, R. L. (2011). *Human resource development* (6th Ed.) Mason, USA: Cengage Learning.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

IMPROVEMENT OF LAND-RECLAMATION STATUS BY WATERING PHYTOMELIORATIVE PLANTS AND SAVING WATER RESOURCES

**Turayev Ulugbek¹, Nurov Dilmurod¹, Isayeva Laylo¹, Barnayeva Munira¹,
Shorofutdinov Humoyun², Sharopov Nurmuhammad², Ibrohimova Kumush².**

1. Assistant, Tashkent Institute of Irrigation and Agricultural Mechanization
Engineers Bukhara branch, Bukhara city, Uzbekistan
2. Bachelor student, Tashkent Institute of Irrigation and Agricultural
Mechanization Engineers Bukhara branch, Bukhara city, Uzbekistan



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-10>

Abstract: In the fields of saline soils of the Bukhara oak, under the grassland alluvial soils, sowing of phytomeliorative plants, Tariq and Corn crops as a second crop in the fields released from the winter wheat, with the reduction of salt washing principles and timing, , grain and duplicate crops. At the same time, tariq and corn seeds will be able to keep the soil moisture content well up to the autumn, reducing the intake of salt in the soil.

Key words: phytomeliorative plants, salt, intensity, melioration, collector, soil, sized waters, recyclable crop, variants, saline washing.

Recommended citation: Turayev Ulugbek, Nurov Dilmurod, Isayeva Laylo, Barnayeva Munira, Shorofutdinov Humoyun, Sharopov Nurmuhammad, Ibrohimova Kumush. IMPROVEMENT OF LAND-RECLAMATION STATUS BY WATERING PHYTOMELIORATIVE PLANTS AND SAVING WATER RESOURCES. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 128-136 (2019).

In our country since the first years of independence, major changes have been made in agriculture, which is one of the most important sectors of the economy. The President of our country, the heads of our government, created legal relations on the basis of decrees and resolutions on improvement of agricultural and land reclamation, and great opportunities for the development of multilateral economy.

The adoption of these decrees requires that the attention be paid to the agrarian and land-reclamation sector and that the living standards of the population increase, and that the population's nutritional requirements are met. to solve important problems. This, in turn, pays great attention to rural and water management personnel.

In the consistent policy pursued by the state, priority is given to the improvement of land reclamation and rational use of water resources to obtain high yields of high quality crops. Currently, the creation of economical irrigation technologies, improvement of land reclamation, repair and reconstruction of collector-drainage systems, land degradation, secondary salinization, full compliance with the irrigation regime and special attention is paid to such events.

Since the early years of independence, efforts have been made to accelerate grain production by reducing the cotton fields and reducing the cotton fields. At present, after harvesting grain crops, most of these areas remain empty due to water shortages resulting in underground waters evaporating

from the ground through the capillaries, and containing minerals and all water-soluble harmful substances the salts are incorporated into the soil, causing salinization of these areas at different levels and as a result, a large amount of water resources are spent on autumn saline cleaning.

To overcome these problems, many scientists in our country have carried out scientific research and experiments. Scientists such as academician Q.Mirzajonov, professor MXXamidov, professor B. Khalikov, associate professor B.Suvanov, A.Hamidov and U.Juraev are the second time to

reclaim crops after winter wheat and to improve the reclamation condition of the soil, phytomeliorant have been experimenting with plant cultivation. At the same time, we have to rely on water resources, reduce the level of soil salinity, obtain extra hectares during water shortages, reduce water consumption for saline, it is desirable to plant the phytomeliorative plants that are resistant to drought, salt-digesting, collecting various useful nutrients in the soil, as well as to prevent the meliorative deterioration of the soil.

Many scientific research and advanced farming practices have

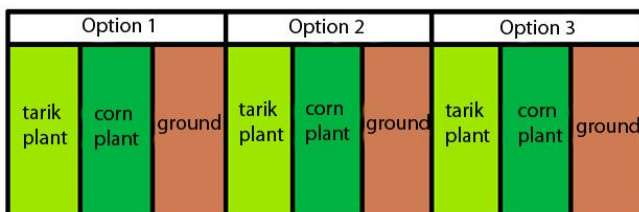
shown that one of the key factors in achieving sustainable high yields of agricultural crops on irrigated lands is the use of scientifically-grounded methods to improve soil fertility and improve fertility to use.

Based on the above conclusions, sowing tariq and corn crops as a second crop in the fields falling out of autumn wheat was carried out in the field of grassy, moderately saline soils of the ErkinShoyim farm of the Alat district of Bukhara region ,

depth of settlements was 1.5-1.65 meters in depth. The experiments were conducted in three versions and 3 times based on PSUYAITI (formerlyPhIthI).

In our first variant, tarik plant was planted, in the second variant, the corn plant and the 3-bed observations were left blank after winter wheat. Our experience was 1 half and the area of each option was 10mx50m or 0.05 hectares.

Testfielddiagram



Results from the experimental field showed that the intake of saline concentration in the Phytomeliorant cultivated areas was slightly less than that of the 3 species, for example, in the sown areas of phytomeliorative plants, there was a decrease in salts relative to the control (pudded) option. At the end of the water cycle, the amount of dry residues in the size of 1,121-

1,139 grams of potato in the planted corn yielded 1,313-1,335 g of dry matter. The plant weight of the soil after harvesting is increased by the relative weight of the soil, which increases the amount of soil grains, that is, the weight of 0-30 cm at the beginning of vegetation, has a weight of 1.46 g / cm³, , in the end of vegetation the plantations of phytomeliorant were 1.43-1.44 g / cm³.

Pic 1.Option field (tarik plant and corn plant)



When analyzing the amount of chlorine in the soil of the experimental field of phytomeliorant, the amount of chlorine in the 0-30 cm layer prior to sowing of the phytomeliorant crops was 0.034%, and the density of 0-100 cm in the soil was 0.032%. Tariq planted in our first variant, the chlorine content at

the end of the growing season was 0.022% in the 0-30 cm layer and 0.025% in the 0-100 cm layer. Chlorine content in our Corn Corner 2 option was 0.021% in the 0-30 cm layer and 0.019% in the 0-100 cm layer at the end of the growing season. In our observable version, the amount of chlorine in

the 0-30 cm layer was 0.046% and 0.04% in the 0-100 cm layer. In our control version, the amount of dry residue in the soil was 0.193% in the 0-30 cm layer at the beginning of the vegetation and by the end of the growing season this value was 0.214%. According to the results of common experiments, the highest salinity control option was observed in the field, which was left without seeding, and the lowest salt content was observed in the Corn Corner field in our 2nd variant.

The highest level of salt washing in the field of testing was recorded in the plow control version of the experimental area. Seasonal salinization of this option was 5828 m³ / ha. The Tariq plant was sown in the first variant with seasonal salinity of 4254 m³ / ha and 1574 m³ / ha of water was consumed as compared to control. The salinity was 2,965 m³ / hectare, which indicates the consumption of 2863 m³ / h less than the control version.



**Pic 2.Shurf, a dug for determining Pic 3.Different soil depths
the levels of the watershed and soil layers**

CONCLUSION

In the fields of the grassy, medium-sandy soils of the Bukhara region, the Tariq and Corn plants, which are resistant to drought and drought-resistant crops, are exposed

to the end of the growing season, salt intake is 29%, salt washing norms - up to 33%, and an additional 24.6 t / ha from 1 hectare, and 480 g / ha of greenhouse grains can be obtained from the corn.

REFERENCES

1. The Decree of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan dated February 7, 2017 "On the Strategy for the Further Development of the Republic of Uzbekistan", N UP-4947.
2. Sh.Mirziyoev - Together we build a free and prosperous Uzbekistan state - Tashkent - "Uzbekistan" -2016.
3. Methods of Field Practices, Cotton Research Institute of Uzbekistan - 2007, methodical manual.
4. Mirzajonov Q.M. "Ameliorative condition of soil in the regions of the republic and factors of their improvement" Cotton and grain Tashkent - 1999.
5. "Tomatoes for the cultivation of high crops of cereal grains". Tashkent, 1996.
6. Hamidov M.X, Shukurlayev X.I, Mamataliev A.B. "Hydroelectric melioration of agricultural production". East, Tashkent. 2009. - 379 pages. 7. Hamidov M.X, Shukurlayev X.I, Mamataliev A.B. "Agricultural hydroelectric melioration". Tashkent. Sharq.2008.-408 pages.
8. Rakhimbaev F.M, Xamidov M.X. "Agricultural melioration". Tashkent. "Work".1996.-364 pages.
9. Rakhimbaev F.M spells. "Recycling of agricultural products". Tashkent. "Cocktails". 1994.-327 pages.
10. Rakhimbaev F.M, Shukurullaev X.I. "Zax Landing Amelioration". Tashkent. "Work".1996.-201 pages.Internet Information.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

CONCEPT "EVERY FAMILY IS AN ENTREPRENEUR" AND INNOVATIVE IDEAS IN IT (SOCIAL AND PHILOSOPHICAL ANALYSIS)

Davletov Jamshid Bekmatovich

Teacher at the Department of "National Idea,
Fundamentals of Spirituality and Law Education"
at Urganch State University, History faculty

Abstract: in this article, there was analyzed the concept "Every Family is an Entrepreneur" and its innovative ideas and in this process there were illustrated the concept of family business, i.e. the concept of "Every Family is an Entrepreneur" and its innovative essence, as a new organizational and legal form of business for the development and expansion for small business and entrepreneurship.

Key words: the program "Every family is an Entrepreneur", a legal and democratic state, human capital, secular state, market economy, family business, family entrepreneurship, family home-work, private entrepreneurship, innovation, urbanization, rule of law, social-political system.



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-11>

Recommended citation: Davletov Jamshid. CONCEPT "EVERY FAMILY IS AN ENTREPRENEUR" AND INNOVATIVE IDEAS IN IT (SOCIAL AND PHILOSOPHICAL ANALYSIS). 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 137-136 (2019).

One of the most pressing issues is the creation of new jobs and the employment of the population, especially young people in Uzbekistan, where the labor sources are developed enough and more than 450,000 young people joining the labor force every year. This is because the main strategic goal of the people of Uzbekistan on building a secular state is to establish a legal democratic state based on the rule of law and market economy, which is certainly a matter of the legitimate

protection of the family institution, its interests and human capital. In this regard, it is important to further strengthen the legal and practical basis for the further development of business culture in family relations, the socio-economic development of families and the creation of decent living conditions for our citizens. It is taken into consideration to implement this goal in the Decree of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan Sh.M. Mirziyoev of June 7, 2018 "On

Every Family is an Entrepreneur". So far, in the academic lexicon, such concepts as "family business", "family entrepreneurship", "family home-work" were used and they meant the family entrepreneurship. The concept of "every family is an entrepreneur" or "businessman family" has been put into use in the above Decree.

So, what is the social-philosophical interpretation of these terms? What is their main concern? Are socio-economic aspects most important in them or families, family values? These questions are of scientific character and search for answers to them is considered as social-philosophical interpretation of the issue. As the founder of the philosophy of the new era, R. Decart says, "first define the essence of the words and you will save people from half of the mistakes they make".

It's necessary to say that nowadays, it is time to legitimize the concept of family business - the concept of "Every family is an entrepreneur" and its innovative essence as a new organizational and legal form of business for the expansion and further development of small business and entrepreneurship. At the moment, another important issue - the adoption of a concept that will enable to further expand the role and share of small businesses in the economy of the country, first of all, private entrepreneurship and the creation of innovative clusters is still actual for us.

"Every family is an entrepreneur" means a family of business people,

business subjects, a group of people who have the opportunity to engage in entrepreneurship, to benefit from their own labor. The core of this group is family and subjects who carry out general activity joining the family from around. Often, the main subjects of entrepreneurship are husband and wife. There will appear an opportunity to particular type of activity and service thanks to these persons' initiative and money resources. Naturally, subjects investing in their own funds plan their own profits. In the process of private property use and entrepreneurial activity expansion and development of this private property are the basis of any entrepreneurship.

Experts point out that entrepreneurship relies on the following principles:

- Independent economic activity by market demand;
- Having a purpose to benefit;
- Being able to act at random taking the economic responsibility and obligation upon;
- Aspiration for news;
- Observing established laws;
- Keeping business secrecy;
- Feeling social responsibility, i.e. assessing the welfare of their community and people as the main focus of their activities, etc. If we are based on these principles and requirements, family entrepreneurship is an independent, voluntary economic activity, profit-driven purpose, risk-management approach, aspiration for innovation and news, which is a guarantee of private property

development. As it turns out, the mechanisms of market economy fully function in family businesses, which combine individual and economic interests with focus on targeted economic activities.

Although improving the economic conditions of the population in Uzbekistan has been praised for decades, there has been no real change in real life. Population's urbanization was only about 35%. Therefore, in the above Decree, the purpose of the program "Every family is an entrepreneur" is described as to improve the material and financial conditions of the population and ensure significant positive changes in the quality and the degree of life.". Thus, the term "family business" is not only an independent economic activity, primarily the improvement of the material conditions of the population, the quality of life and the urbanization.

Lifestyle, urbanization is not just a washing machine or a car, it is also considered as Wi Fi, personal computer or notebook, interactive means, free access to the world's people, high service, medical care at home, at a convenient time, usage of heat and electricity sources without any limitation or interruption. The most effective, advanced test of states that meets individual demands and needs is entrepreneurship, self-service. Family business is the most effective form of full satisfaction of the diverse demands and needs of the population. This is because

entrepreneurial activity is based on the demands of the specific needs of people. As long as there are such orders, people are willing to pay for their remuneration, but only in this case, entrepreneurship innovation appears and is organized as a new type of service. Where there is an opportunity to pay for the demand and the need, the news and the new type of service, there is a civilized relationship between business entities and the population "in accordance with market economy laws".

Literatures note that entrepreneurship is a social-historical feature of our people. However, its extensive support by the state, as the main objective of the state's economic policy, is a completely new phenomenon and innovation. Entrepreneurship, family business has never been so widely and actively supported by the socio-political system, the government, as it is today. Over the past two years, eight laws, more than 30 Presidential Decrees and Resolutions have been adopted to ensure entrepreneurship and innovation. For example, in the Decree of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan "On Approval of the Strategy for Innovative Development of the Republic of Uzbekistan for 2019-2021" (2018, September 21) "expanding the range of competitive products in domestic and foreign markets", "use of modern innovative ideas", "human capital development" were defined as tasks.

It is difficult to do these tasks without businessmen who aspire to innovation, the use of innovative ideas. Today, family entrepreneurs are engaged in various types of activities such as fishing, poultry farming, rabbit, livestock, home-work and handicraft. For example, according to the demands and needs of the population, 22-25 thousand tons of fish should be grown in Khorezm region. But in 2017, only 40-42% of these needs were satisfied. Even, the region can export fish products. Today in Khorezm there are 568 fish farms, 75% of which are family businessmen. They include 7,757 hectares of natural and 3225 hectares of artificial reservoirs. In 2018, the region implemented 80 projects worth 31 billion 126 million sums. Of these, more than 24 billion 526 million sums are bank creditors. The rest of the money was paid by entrepreneurs themselves.

When the head of our state Mirziyoev visited Khorezm region in January 2017, he got acquainted with the family fishery complex "Boltaboy aksakal" in Khiva district. He pointed out that fishery is a very beneficial branch and it serves human health. After that, a modern complex and a limited company "Khorezm Fish Industry Agro" was set up in Chinobod village of Khiva district.

"From China," said Hikmat Olloberganov, the manager of the company, "we have expanded the range of the lines of preparing and packaging canned and sausage equipment for freezing, water

oxygen enrichment and utensils to feed production equal to \$ 1 million 461,000. Now our workshops have the capacity to produce 500 tons of fish a year. Today, we have prepared four types of canned fish and sausages. By 2018 alone, we have earned 42 billion net profits on account of those.

It is possible to mention lots of such examples. The fact is that it was difficult to imagine that the production of canned fish in Khorezm 20 to 30 years ago was carried out by private entrepreneurs and family businesses were actively involved in such innovative activities. At first, 15-20 metric centners of fish per hectare were taken from the basin and today it is up to 150-200 metric centners. Experts estimate that a healthy person should consume at least 12 kilograms of fish a year and 1 kilogram of fish and fish food per month. We need to double our production of fish and fish food to reach that figure. This is how family business helps socially and nationally.

Family Entrepreneurship is a small enterprise with two to three or twelve employees, a company, a farm, a cultural and consumer service facility. For example, almost 82-85% of cafes, bars, restaurants, training centers, nurseries and shops belong to family business in Tashkent city and Tashkent region. National craftsmanship in the republic - the main part of the subjects of sewing skull caps, sewing and textile are family businessmen. Obviously, the effective use of the

potential of families helps to solve many social problems. The Decree of the head of our state "On Measures to Organize Enterprise Entrepreneurship Initiatives and Projects in the Regions" of September 11, 2018, it was said that business people face a number of barriers. Credit and land allocation, obtaining licenses, access to external markets, attracting investment, negligence in local offices and sluggishness were criticized. According to him, the state of free-standing state property will be sold at the expense of zero. Free state-owned property or land parcels shall be granted to the auctioneer right after a one-year advance reservation, after which the terms of the investment agreement are subsequently fulfilled.

In Uzbekistan, 2018 was named as the Year of Support of Effective Business, Innovation Ideas and Technologies and 76,000 projects worth 21 trillion sums and 1 billion dollars were implemented within the framework of the State Program. Due to the measures taken, real incomes of the population increased by 12% compared to 2017. Within the framework of such programs as "Every family is an entrepreneur",

"Youth is our future", about 2 trillion sums were allocated, and more than 2,600 business projects were implemented. Since the beginning of the year, additional 5.5 trillion sums of additional funds have been left in the regions due to the overpaid taxes. It is 6 times more than in the previous year and 32 times more than in 2016.

The year 2019 was named as "Year of Active Investments and Social Development" with the aim of logical continuation of the work started in 2018. Positive outcomes in the economy will provide a systematic solution to the problems faced in the social sphere and can only be achieved through the development of entrepreneurship, endless work and aspiration, and prosperity. In this regard Nadjmiddin Kubra, the great scholar, said, "I saw success in efforts, and failure - in ignorance and laziness".

Thus, entrepreneur promotes socio-economic life with his own initiative and resources, responsibility for his work creates a business environment in the society, in which he creates a sense of service to the interests of the people, his news and innovation are in line with the essence and dynamism of the reforms in our country.

Referenges

Декарт Р. Избранные произведения в 2 т. Т. 2 (Selected works in 2 volumes. V. 2.). - Moscow: Мысль, 1991. - P. 278.

Синдаров К., Жуманазаров И. Тадбиркорлик субъектларини текширишнинг ҳуқуқий асослари (Legal basics of checking business subjects). - Tashkent.: Янги асп авлоди, 2006. - 12 p.

Ўзбекистон Республикаси Президентининг Қарори. "Ҳар бир оила - тадбиркор" дастурини амалга ошириш тўғрисида // Халқ сўзи, 2018, 8 июнь (Resolution of the President of Uzbekistan. On carrying out the program "Every Family is an Entrepreneur"). Newspaper "Khalq suzi", June 8, 2018).

Хизрич Р., Питерс М. Предпринимательство (Entrepreneurship). - Moscow: Экономика, 1992; Ламперш Хайнд. Социальная рыночная экономика. Германский путь (Social market economy. German way). - Moscow: Экономика, 1993.

Лившиц А.Я. Введение в рыночную экономику (Introduction to market economy). - Moscow: Экономика, 1992.

Раззақов А. Иқтисодий тафаккур сарчашмалари (Springs of economic thought). - Tashkent: Ўзбекистон НМИУ, 2011.

Ўзбекистон Республикаси Президентининг Фармони. "2019-2021 йилларда Ўзбекистон Республикасини инновацион ривожлантириш стратегиясини тасдиқлаш тўғрисида" // Халқ сўзи, 2018, 22 сентябрь (Decree of the President of Republic of Uzbekistan. "On Approval of the Strategy for Innovative Development of the Republic of Uzbekistan for 2019-2021". Khalq suzi September 21, 2018).

Ўзбекистон Республикаси Президенти нутқи. "Иқтисодни инновацияларни кенг жалб этган ҳолда ҳар томонлама ривожлантириш - халқ фаровонлигини юксалтиришнинг муҳим омили" // Халқ сўзи, 2018, 30 ноябрь (Speech of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan. "Developing Economy in all Branches by Widely Attracting Innovations is an Important Factor of Improving People's Welfare". Khalq suzi, November 30, 2018).

The above shown place.

Мирзиёев Ш.М. "Ўзбекистон Республикаси Конституцияси қабул қилинганининг 26 йиллигига бағишланган тантанали маросимдаги маърузаси" // Халқ сўзи, 2018, 8 декабрь (Mirziyoev Sh.M. The talk at the ceremony devoted to the 26th year anniversary of the constitution of Uzbekistan. Khalq suzi, December 8, 2018).

Мирзиёев Ш.М. "Ўзбекистон Республикаси Олий Мажлисига Мурожатномаси" // Халқ сўзи, 2018, 29 декабрь (Mirziyoev Sh.M. Address letter to the Supreme Meeting of the Republic of Uzbekistan. Khalq suzi, December 29, 2018).

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

TOPONYMS OF TASHKENT AS A FACTOR OF REFLECTION OF HISTORICAL PROCESSES (1917 - 1980)

Khayriya Burieva

PhD historical science

Abstract: The article is devoted to the subject of interrelation of historical events and the processes of formation of urban toponyms, on the example of the structure of toponymic groups of names of districts and streets of Tashkent in the 20th century. The classification of these groups of toponyms and examples of toponyms reflecting historical events in the life of the city are given.

Key words: toponymy of Tashkent, historical factor, names of districts and streets, semantic analysis, toponymic groups.



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-12>

Recommended citation: Khayriya Burieva. TOPONYMS OF TASHKENT AS A FACTOR OF REFLECTION OF HISTORICAL PROCESSES (1917 - 1980). 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 143-151 (2019).

Currently, Tashkent is the capital of the Republic of Uzbekistan, one of the major centers of culture, art, science, technology, industry, commerce on the Asian continent, a city with a rich and interesting history. According to the results of archaeological excavations, its age is determined to be 2,200 years old. From a historical point of view, its history can be divided into the ancient, medieval stages, the period of the three khanates, the colonial, Soviet times, the era of independence. The political, socio-economic, cultural and spiritual processes of these times are reflected in the

historical sources of various types.

One of the peculiar types of historical sources are toponyms - names of localities. They appear at various stages of the history of regions and carry information about the nature, topography, climate, population, ethnic structure, administrative division, political structure, social and economic life, religion, languages of the region. It is advisable to investigate them according to geographical, linguistic and historical classifications.

Forming over many centuries, the historical toponyms of the city of Tashkent, from the point of view

of language groups, have formed certain linguistic layers, such as Sogdian, Turkic, Persian-Arabic, Russian-European, mixed. Their occurrence on the territory of Tashkent is closely connected, first of all, with political processes that entailed ethnic and other transformations on its territory. The study of the structure of toponymic groups, as well as the etymological analysis of toponyms, allows for a deeper and more reliable coverage of the history of the capital at various stages and in general.

At this stage, there are a number of scientific works of specialists, where, against the background of disclosing the historical development of the capital from antiquity to the present, information is given on the origin and etymology of some toponyms of the city of Tashkent 1. P.167; 2.P.3; 5.P.80; 6.P.24; 8.P.190.

Studies have also been carried out directly on the historical toponymy of Tashkent in the XIX - XX centuries, the emergence of toponyms, their classification, structure, quantitative indicators, dynamics, etymology, semantic and linguistic toponymic groups 3.P.234; 4.P.122 .

Thus, the emergence of a Russian-European stratum of historical toponyms in Tashkent began in the second half of the nineteenth century. and continues to the present. More precisely, they were included in the structure of the toponymy of the city under the rule of the Turkestan Governor-General, then during the period of Soviet power

(the 20th century). And in the 21st century, in the years of independent development of Uzbekistan, the share of toponyms borrowed from foreign languages in the city, as well as throughout the country, is increasingly increasing due to the active integration of Uzbekistan into the world community, the expansion of its foreign relations, the attraction of foreign investments, establishing comprehensive cooperation with many countries of the CIS, Europe, America and Asia.

Of particular interest is the classification of toponyms according to their semantic meaning, which allows to identify the specificity of urban names and their relationship to the history of the city. Thus, on the territory of Tashkent during the period under study there existed toponyms that can be divided into the following groups: anthrotoponyms, toponyms associated with the geographical features of the region, names reflecting the economic and social development of the capital, toponyms associated with cultural and spiritual development of the region related to ethnic groups, historical events, etc.

In this article, we will look at changes in the structure of the toponymy of Tashkent during the Soviet period on the example of the names of districts and streets of the city. As a result of the establishment of the power of the Soviets in Russia and on the territory of the neighboring regions, a unified control system of the USSR was introduced

with the center in Moscow, Russian was adopted as the official language. Tashkent became the capital of the Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic, incorporated into the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics. This political situation has played a definite role, both in the history of the republic and its capital city. For more than seventy years, the republic developed according to the programs of five-year plans approved by the state center, where all directions were coordinated with the political regime and ideology of the Soviet state. This specificity was reflected in the toponymy of various territories of the country, including the city of Tashkent.

It is known that during the rule of the Turkestan General Governorship (1867-1917), the city of Tashkent was its center and consisted of two parts - the Old City and the New City 3.P.28-29 . This division was maintained in the first years of Soviet power. After the establishment of the power of the Soviets, the new municipal authorities began to carry out administrative and territorial changes in the city, the initial stage of which falls on the 1920s. In 1929, a decree of the Presidium of the Central Executive Committee on the organization of city councils was issued, according to which the territory of Tashkent was divided into four districts, as indicated in the document of the Executive Committee, "firstly, for the Council and, in general, the city government to establish constant control over

the life of the city and its related territories, and secondly, to create conditions for attracting people to the cause of Soviet construction" 9.P.3-20; 4.P.9 .

At first, these four city districts were simply called by numbers - "I, II, III, IV districts"; in November 1929, the decision of the Executive Committee gave them the following names: "Leninsky, Oktyabrsky, Proletarsky, Stalin's". In the 1930s, the territory of Tashkent expanded with the annexation of former collective farm lands around the city, and two more urban districts were added - Kirovsky and Frunzensky. During these years, the Proletarsky District was renamed Kuibyshevsky. So, in the names of six urban areas, five were the names of famous political figures of the Soviet state, and one (October) was named after the historical event of that period - the victory of the October revolution of 1917, which resulted in the establishment of Soviet power.

During World War II, over 1 million people were evacuated to Uzbekistan from the territories of Ukraine, Belarus, Russia and other regions of the USSR. After the war, most of this population returned to their former places of residence, but there were also those who remained to live in the republic. Due to the mechanical growth of the population during this period, the number of residents increased, which was one of the reasons for the formation here of two more new urban areas - Moscow and Central.

However, in 1956, Moscow and Stalin, in 1959, the Central districts were abolished, and the city now consisted of five districts.

In the same period, an intensive expansion of the residential area of Chilanzar in the south-west of the capital began, where neighborhoods were erected, along with local residents, representatives of various nationalities and ethnic groups, most of whom remained in the city after evacuation, were settled. As a result, in 1962 a new administrative unit in the city was formed - Chilanzar district. It is assumed that the toponym "chilanzar" refers to the group of natural names, i.e. it means "a place with many gardens." However, the full etymology of this place name has not yet been established.

It should be noted that not only political events, but also natural factors influenced the toponymy of Tashkent in the 20th century. In particular, a large earthquake of up to 8 points occurred on April 26, 1966 in Tashkent, the epicenter of which was in the Kashkar and Labzak mahalla, the maximum damage zone reached 10-12 sq. Km. As a result of this natural disaster, many buildings in the city center were destroyed: more than 2 million square meters. living space, 236 administrative buildings, about 700 trade and catering facilities, 26 utilities, about 180 educational institutions, schools for 8 thousand places, 26 cultural and educational institutions, 185 medical institutions, 245 buildings of

industrial facilities, were left without housing 78 families or 300 thousand people, there were victims 10.P.232.

To eliminate the consequences of the earthquake and in order to restore Tashkent, a large number of people were attracted from all regions of the republic, as well as from other territories of the Soviet state. The city was rebuilt in 3.5 years. According to statistics, housing was built on 3200 square meters, a lot of kindergartens, schools, institutes, buildings of state, commercial, public institutions, commercial enterprises. The reconstruction of Tashkent was carried out according to a specially developed plan. As a result, due to some expansion of the urban area, construction of new buildings, increase in population, especially due to labor migration from other territories of the country, it became necessary to increase administrative and territorial units. And in 1967-1977 4 more urban districts were formed in Tashkent: Sergeli, Khamza, Sabir Rakhimov, Akmal Ikramovsky. Sergeli district is located in the southwestern part of the capital, originated on the basis of Sergeli massif, and was mainly built up after the 1966 earthquake. This name of the area is considered ethnotoponym. In 1968, the Khamza district was established in the eastern part of Tashkent, where many industrial facilities and residential areas of the population were located.

The name of the region is an anthropotoponym, since it is

named after the famous Uzbek poet, playwright, composer, director, teacher, statesman Hamza Hakimzade Niyoz (1889-1929). In 1970, during the years of the restoration of the city after the earthquake, in the north-western part of Tashkent, another new district was formed as a result of joining to the city of some rural districts, as well as pieces of land from the October and Kirovsky districts. He was given the name of General Sabir Rakhimov (1902-1945), who died heroically in battles during World War II. The fourth district emerged in 1977, as a result of the alienation of certain territories from the Chilanzar and Oktyabrsky districts (since these regions became very densely populated). This area was named after the statesman of the republic during the years of Akmal Ikramov's Soviet rule (1898-1938). In the 1980s, the city already had ten districts. Their names can be classified according to the following toponymic groups: anthroponyms (7 names) - Akmal Ikramovskiy, Kirovskiy, Kuibyshevskiy, Leninskiy, Sabir Rakhimov, Frunzenskiy, Khamza districts; place name associated with the nature of the area (1 name) - Chilanzar region; ethnotonym (1 name) - Sergeli district; a toponym that reflects a historical event (1 name) - Oktyabrskiy district.

It is known that in 1991 the Soviet Union collapsed due to the imminent political and economic crisis in the country. Independent

states were formed in the post-Soviet space. Among the first declared its sovereignty the Republic of Uzbekistan. In the years of independence, the city of Tashkent has retained its metropolitan position as the center of a sovereign state. The territory of the city and the urban agglomeration is expanding to this day. The role of Tashkent is growing as an important center not only in the country, but throughout Central Asia. Such an important political change is also reflected in the toponymic structure of Tashkent. A new district, Bektemirskiy, was formed, dozens of streets, hundreds of new buildings were built.

In the period under review, along with the new administrative-territorial units, many streets were formed in Tashkent, which was connected with political and socio-economic factors. The list of names of city streets was considerably enlarged by the names of new streets, as well as by renaming some of the old streets. So, in the 1930s of the twentieth century there were more than 500 large and medium length streets 7.P.1-2 .

Semantic analysis of the names of city streets of this period allows them to be classified into toponymic groups and identify the quantitative correlation, which is important in studying the dynamics of toponyms of the city, establishing the relationship between the toponymic structure of the region and its historical development.

Table 1
The classification of street names of Tashkent in the late 1930 s. 4.P.18

<i>№</i>	<i>Toponymic groups</i>	<i>The number of place names in the group</i>	<i>Examples of street names and their meaning</i>
1.	Toponyms related to socio-economic life	132	Gulbazar street (means "flowers market"), Temiryolchilar street (named after the railway station)
2.	Mixed place names	123	3-rd Akkurgan street (the third street with the name Akkurgan is "white hill"), 2ng Saperny lane (named after the Saperny battalion, previously located here)
	Anthroponyms	110	Zengi-ata street (on behalf of the famous shrine in the Islamic world), Rosa Luxemburg street (on behalf of the famous Polish-German scientist philosopher and economist)
4.	Street names associated with nature and natural objects	71	Salar street (from the name of the river Salar, which flows through the area), Almazar street (meaning "apple orchard")
5.	Place names representing various place names	30	Khorezm street (from the name of the region in Uzbekistan, now it is the name of the region), Baltic street (from the name of the Baltic Sea in the north of Europe)
6.	Ethnoonyms	20	Kara-Kirghiz street (the name of the Turkic tribe), Turkmen street (from the name of the people in Central Asia)
7.	Street names associated with historical events	12	8 th March street (named after the holiday – International Women’s Day March 8), October street (named after the October revolution of 1917 by the Bolsheviks in Russia)

Further, due to the expansion of the city in the post-war years and during the restoration of the city after the earthquake of 1966, the territory of the city expanded, new quarters and streets were built; the status of the capital city, its position as a political and socio-economic, cultural, educational and spiritual center led to the concentration of many buildings of various institutions and enterprises, the construction of new neighborhoods and streets, each of which had its name, This position of Tashkent was directly reflected in its toponymy. Thus, in the 1980s, there were 1107 major city streets and streets of average size 11.P.119 .

It should be noted that in 50 years, that is, compared with the 1930s, not only the number of city streets has changed, but also their toponymic groups. In particular, in the 1980s, the number of large and medium-sized city streets increased by 2.1 times, the names of these streets included 1) the anthroponyms presented the most numerous group and their lot grew almost 5 times (the state policy was aimed at strengthening measures to perpetuating the memory of statesmen of the country, heroes of the Great Patriotic War, heroes of labor, honored workers of scientific and other spheres); 2) the number

of place names associated with geographic names has increased by 7 times (here there is an increase in interregional and external relations of the republic, and as a result, the geography of names has increased, that is, the addition of names associated with numerous regions of the Soviet Union, as well as with the names of cities in other countries of the socialist system); 3) street names reflecting the socio-political life of the city, more than 2 times (this indicates an increasing role of the political and ideological factor, as well as the development of branches of the national economy, expanding the network of educational and medical institutions in the capital); 4) toponyms pointing to natural objects, also increased by 2 times (due to the growing number of parks, residential areas, as well as the territorial expansion of the city due to the outskirts, which had agricultural objects with the corresponding names); 5) the number of streets named after historical events increased by 2.8 times (mainly due to events related to anniversaries of political

organizations, also historical events that took place in various regions of the Union and in a number of foreign countries that collaborated with him), 6) however, the number of ethnotoponyms remained almost unchanged (perhaps this can be explained by the fact that the Soviet government sought to consolidate the nationalities that lived on its territory without highlighting the national factor). It should be especially noted that two new semantic groups appeared in the toponymic composition of street names of this period - 7) names associated with cultural and spiritual factors in the life and activities of the population, 8) toponyms, which are oriental names of people. The appearance of these two toponymic groups testifies to the increased attention of society to the development of cultural life, to aesthetic growth, to an increase in the human need for spiritual perfection, his striving for freer thinking, capturing the beauty of the world and its essence, as well as its good intentions in the names places, objects that surround it in everyday life.

Table 2
Classification of street names of Tashkent in the early 1980 s.
4.P.86

<i>№</i>	<i>Toponymic groups</i>	<i>The number of place names in the group</i>	<i>Examples of street names and their meaning</i>
1.	Anthrotoponyms	524	Ashrafi street (on behalf of the famous Uzbek composer of the twentieth century Mukhtar Ashrafi), general Petrov street (named after the Soviet general, hero of World War II), Shastri street (named after the political leaders of India)

2.	Place names representing various place names	214	Altai street (in honor of the Altai Mountains in the south of Siberia), Odessa street (from the name of the city in the Crimea), Leninabad street (from the names of the city in Tajikistan)
3.	Toponyms related to socio-economic life	213	Airport Square (due to the location of the street near the airport), Petersburg State University street (due to the location along the street of Central Asian State University), Textile street (from the name of the Tashkent Textile Factory)
4.	Names associated with cultural and spiritual factors	141	Mehribon street (translated from Uzbek means "merciful"), "Izvestia" street (from russian "news" and this is the name of the newspaper "Izvestia", which was a periodical of the governments of the Soviet Union), Madaniyat street (translated from Uzbek means "culture")
5.	Street names associated with nature and natural objects	122	Archazar street (in Uzbek means "spruce garden"), Ariqli street (named for the location of the street near the river), Sadovaya street (from russian "garden" and due to the location of a large garden on the street).
6.	Toponyms for Eastern names of people	40	Gayrat sreet (male name, means "energetic, decisive, hardworking, boy"), Gulsanam sreet (female name means "the most beautiful flower among the most beautiful, that is, girl of incomparable beauty"), Zumrad sreet (female name, its meaning is "a gem of green (emerald); priceless, like an emerald, or a girl with green (blue) eyes").
7.	Street names associated with historical events	30	Pobeda street (from russian "victory" and named after the victory of the Soviet Union in World War II (1939-1945)), 40 years of the Komsomol street (associated with the celebration of the 40 th anniversary of the political all union youth organization of the Young Communist League).
8.	Ethnotoponyms	21	Karamurt passage (associated with the name of the Turkic tribe of Kara Murut), Tatar street ("Tatars" – the name of the Turkic people).

In general, studies on the structure of the historical toponyms of Tashkent, in particular, the names of its districts and streets in the 1917-1980s, indicate the expansion of the urban area, the growth of its population, economic strengthening, the development of social, cultural, spiritual life population, which vividly reflected on its toponymy. As a result of the revolution, the Bolsheviks established Soviet power, which pursued here a centralized policy aimed at the approval of the ideology of the Soviet state. These

events were reflected in the names of urban areas, neighborhoods, streets, objects, in the names of which there are toponyms, both related to the local nature, history and traditions, and practically unrelated to the specifics of the region and not reflecting its historical development. The analysis of the semantic meaning and dynamics of the growth of urban toponyms allows us to trace the picture of the historical events that took place in this period in the capital itself and in the whole country.

References

1. Alimova D. and other. History of Tashkent (from ancient times to today). - Tashkent, 2007. - p.167.
2. Buriev O. Is "Darkhan the land of Khan's? // Newspaper "Tashkent evening". February 10, 1992.
3. Burieva X. Historical toponymy of Tashkent (XIX - XX centuries). - Tashkent: Noshirlik yog'dusi, 2009 - p.234.
4. Burieva X.A. From the history of Tashkent city names (1917-1980). - Tashkent: Academy, 2012. - p.122.
5. Khasanov X. From the history of Middle Eastern nominal. - Tashkent: Fan, 1965. - p.80.
6. Muhammadjonov A. Ancient Tashkent. - Tashkent: Sharq, 2002. - p.24.
7. Plan-guide to the city of Tashkent in 1936. - Tashkent, 1936.
8. Qoraev S. Do you know the geographical names mean? (Toponyms) - Tashkent: Uzbekistan, 1970. - p.190.
9. State Archive of Tashkent. Foundation 10, inventory 1, case 618, sheets 3-20.
10. Tashkent. Encyclopedia. / Editorial board: A.Akromov, B.Alimov, M.Aminov, etc. - Tashkent: State Scientific Publishing House "Uzbekistan Milly Encyclopedia", 2009. - p.232.
11. Tashkent: a short guide reference book. / N.A. Dekhkonkhodjaev, A.I.Grishenko, S.R.Rakhmanov, A.S.Zeltser. - Tashkent: Uzbekistan, 1981. - p.119.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**OLIGARCH CRIME AND ILLEGAL SEIZURES AS
THE PERPETRATOR AND THE TOOL OF CRIMINAL
BANKRUPTCIES IN THE REPUBLIC OF KAZAKHSTAN**

Indira Mirzamukhamedova

Lawyer, Almaty City Bar Association

Doctoral student, Caspian University

Republic of Kazakhstan, Almaty

Abstract: The article analyses the influence of oligarch crime upon the economy of the Republic of Kazakhstan. It also looks in detail at such illegal and shadowy activity as illicit asset seizures in the context of criminal bankruptcy and the growing relevance of providing the long-term economic security of the Republic of Kazakhstan. The article uncovers some causes, which have an effect on detection and predictability of such illegal activities.

Key words: oligarch crime, criminal bankruptcy, illegal seizures, the perpetrator of criminal bankruptcy, economy, criminal business, economic crime, economic security.



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-13>

Recommended citation: Indira Mirzamukhamedova. OLIGARCH CRIME AND ILLEGAL SEIZURES AS THE PERPETRATOR AND THE TOOL OF CRIMINAL BANKRUPTCIES IN THE REPUBLIC OF KAZAKHSTAN. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 152-159 (2019).

The phenomenon of bankruptcy in general and criminal bankruptcy in particular is hardly a novelty for the Republic of Kazakhstan and its legal system. This phenomenon relies on a mobile platform of a complex type consisting of such legal areas as civil, criminal, administrative, labour, corporate et al. Such complexity per se gives an idea as to the depth of the legal and public relations contained in this system. The same multi-layered system accounts for the dead-end situations, often incapable of resolution, which, one way or another, the law-enforcement bodies

come across in the process of their work on cases where the starting point is criminal bankruptcy [1, p.120].

Criminal entities engaged in the organised type of activities are zealous in using the situation where the re-distribution of property is aggressive in nature since for them it presents a fertile soil to steal this very property. At present in our country one cannot fail to note the upsurge of the mercenary activities aimed at turning the tool of bankruptcy, originally useful in fostering the financial recovery of the economy, into another tool, which

can be called nothing else but the financial tool of its corruption.

The long-term process of the development of our economy has been going on not without visible efforts and, what is most important, without sufficiently consistent and time-appropriate measures in the form of a checking and protecting mechanism against criminal encroachment upon its foundation. By the beginning of the third millennium, which was, perhaps, the most important and difficult period for the economy, suitable conditions were also created for the growth of the above-mentioned crime. Since the criminal economy has been given a certain push in development, which had a shadowy hue, it has also gained opportunities for both full and partial "symbiosis" with the State sector of the economy. The face of such economy with a criminal shade has become precisely the oligarch crime, with oligarchy being a particular social structure, where the quasi-legislative power of a few mercenary-minded entities is concentrated on illegal or partially illegal grounds, which is a salient feature of the so called "oligarchy" [2, p.90].

Understandably, one cannot describe oligarchy as a phenomenon only as "black" without considering "grey", which is somewhat removed from various extremes of this notion. Such an extreme could be illustrated by a distinctive example when entities possessing high-level quasi-legislative power, pass on their job/

position as inheritance from father to son, within their own circle, thereby bypassing prescribed legal procedures of electing to these positions other people, often some of the most worthy potential contenders. On the contrary, if the election instrument prescribes the so-called property qualification, with the letter of the law being strictly adhered to, the oligarchy in this case, although often not being considered legitimate, nevertheless can be considered closest to the bona fide and honest politics with regard to the economy of the State. The so-called "elected" entities simply do not allow any other people, apart from their close circle, to get the jobs/positions, which is what oligarchy is in the direct meaning of this phenomenon [3, p.111].

The oligarchs themselves, not only in the Republic of Kazakhstan, but also in Russia, as well as in other post-Soviet States, are divided into the so-called nation-wide clans and clans of lesser size. The power system of such clans is generally built according to the classic perception of oligarchy, specifically, according to Aristotle's system of oligarchy types, where it is viewed as classic. Classic oligarchy implies that only well-off entities can be allowed access to power, and this is the main axiom of this type, a certain "blood circulatory system" of the said phenomenon. Power is formed and serves itself in the closed "eco-space". The laws of this power completely and utterly work for the entity in

command; the entity also makes the laws [4, p.10].

The factor of "execution and pardoning" does not exist in the oligarchs' toolbox, nor does their own determination of tax liabilities or other competitively advantageous and objectively expressed actions for themselves. Thus, this situation forces oligarchs to use criminal tools to expand their authority and privileged actions.

One of the strongest tools in this scheme is illegal seizure, representing a certain chain of operations, which makes use of loopholes in the legislation and is used to gain authoritative powers over assets, as a rule the assets of a given enterprise. In this context, criminal bankruptcies become a convenient, simple and, most importantly, cheap tool of such shadowy privatisation, which eventually could not fail to turn into a flourishing business in the hands of a criminal privileged layer of society [6].

Most regrettably, this rather widespread stereotyped axiom happens to be reflected in objective reality, namely, in the criminal acquisition of all large assets in the sphere of business. As is well-known, conducting business is far from being the most straightforward thing, to put it mildly, starting from massive responsibility and finishing with various huge risks and problems. Kazakhstani businesspersons more often than not come across the insurmountably developed "wall" in

the form of illegal seizures, acting as a "parasite" for the target business in all meanings of this word. In such a case, transfer of assets from possession of owners on legal grounds is quite a normal occurrence. Illegal seizures are characterised by a range of procedures for all eventualities, starting with direct threats and use of violence and finishing with the bypassing of legal procedures using the most crafty and sly ways. In doing so they successfully put on the mask of "strictly abiding by the law", contradicting it at the same time.

As a phenomenon, illegal seizure undermines the respect to the rights of property in every possible way. It also has a damaging effect upon the image of the international aspect of business in the Republic of Kazakhstan, which cannot but obstruct such an important factor as long-term investments in the future [5, p.89].

The major reasons for the rampage of illegal seizures in the Republic of Kazakhstan are the weakness of courts and the law enforcement system, especially against the backdrop of the rise of uncontrolled corruption activities. It would be extremely difficult to carry out an illegal seizure of an enterprise on a certain territory without the support of the district or city administration, especially if an enterprise is big enough. In the vast majority of cases, it is the support of dishonest authorities that acts as a decisive factor of illegal seizures

and criminal bankruptcies. In its turn, the weakness of the legislative framework clearly and distinctly indicates that the registration laws are a far cry from perfection or any acceptable level at all. For example, how is it possible that in the absence of a certain legitimate entity all the documents pertaining to registration could be transferred to another entity of a dubious nature? Any grounds for that? They do not exist. Any questions? Nobody has any. The mere fact that the business owner can indeed confirm its legitimate rights by producing its passport or the power of attorney duly notarised, is not even taken into consideration.

For the past 10 years, assets in the Republic of Kazakhstan have tangibly expanded. Against this background, the rampage of illegal seizure as a phenomenon reflects the low level of entrepreneurship culture of business entities. Owners rarely even give a thought to the fact that they may become a direct target of illegal seizure. Indeed, they do think about pressing issues, such as priority and long-term business development, building relations with power structures, but absolutely do not attempt to forecast a potential illegal seizure. Unfortunately, this is human psychology, and the level of education or upbringing makes no difference what so ever. Such is life that people generally do not want to think about bad things, and this is understandable. Nevertheless, it is the entities who bear the brunt of

a certain responsibility on their shoulders that must eradicate this feature in themselves at all costs, because it is these entities that are the most important economic "bricks" in the foundation of a State. Apart from everything listed above the lack of entrepreneurship culture is also reflected in the deliberate breach of labour, tax and civil legislation. Everything listed above cannot fully reveal the decisive factors of criminal bankruptcy in our State [5].

It is also important to bring to light the weakness of market institutions, most evident recently, because in this way or the other they cease to be reliable regulators of the market environment. The State is gradually relinquishing the opportunity of the mutually beneficial adaptation of the legislative framework to market institutions, which, in their turn, would dictate the rules of behaviour to all entities engaged in market relations in the interests of both the State on the whole, and its people in particular, and not just in the interests of a group of privileged physical and legal power entities.

Illegal seizure, as a phenomenon, greatly impedes normal development of the real sector of economy of any State. Addressing the State tasks is not only last on the list; it is not even on the list. The reality is that this phenomenon aims only at redistribution of property, and this process can last not just for a long time but endlessly. One can describe the illegal seizure as a key aspect of

criminal bankruptcy, which slowly but surely is drying up economic resources. It is possible to record the massive outflow of capital abroad, also as a consequence of illegal seizures. For entrepreneurship, it is pretty much one of a few efficient ways out of a developed situation, since, in case of worsening of that very situation the entrepreneurship may try to survive in another place, more favourable for conducting business. This cannot but have an impact on the drain of a useful labour force, detrimental for our economy, on a nation-wide scale. Business development will not be on track while illegal seizure exists on the scale currently indicated by various experts [6, p.10].

Just as a person in a state of permanent fear cannot work properly, enterprises cannot function normally being constantly in a state of self-defence. It is rather difficult to fully evaluate the damage caused by illegal seizure, since by and large it takes place covertly, which does not allow for calculating the damage in monetary terms. Illegal seizure directly undermines the prestige of the Republic of Kazakhstan in the international economic arena. Most regrettably, it is common for our mentality to think that if something has been forcefully taken from somebody, or somebody was locked up, they have deserved it. This is becoming simply a statistic. In many civilised and developed countries, such circumstances are more likely to

cause a state of shock. What we consider normal circumstances are by no means the same for many countries. Precisely such image damage inflicts investment blows on our economy since many economic processes taking place in our country directly engage foreign owners. The expanding criminal bankruptcy resulting from similarly expanding oligarch crime by no means helps the formation of an advanced and technology-savvy economy of the Republic of Kazakhstan. Matters are made worse by the fact that, as a rule, bankruptcy cases have been brought specifically against companies attractive from the investment point of view, while the economically hopeless companies have continued their activities in the same way as before. This points to the unwholesome selectiveness of the bankruptcy procedure because as a result quite a viable branch of business is affected. In its turn, the mechanisms of rehabilitation character, with very rare exceptions, have not been working at all.

The present period of economic development of the Republic of Kazakhstan is witnessing a peak of criminal bankruptcies. It has become especially clear after there has been formed a segment of corporate raider companies directly specialising in arranged illegal bankruptcies. It follows from this that successful counteraction to such a phenomenon is almost impossible without the engagement of the relevant level

experts, including appraisers and auditors. However, there appears to be one more problem in this area, namely, the problem of interaction between the expert community and the law enforcement bodies, which regulate this area. Such interaction is extremely weakly developed, and no steps have been taken that could bring it closer to being efficient and effective in the future. The problem of such expert activities and experts' interaction with the State comes exclusively from the mistrust of the law enforcement bodies towards experts' competence because their impartiality and professional level are put to doubt since they work directly for private companies whose qualification is difficult to check and sometimes impossible to check in a proper way. In addition, the budget does not provide for preparation of expert opinions regarding the availability of the signs of criminal bankruptcy. As a result, case law on the issue of criminal bankruptcies is in legal limbo, and malpractice in the area of bankruptcy has been left without due punishment. That is why it is so important to consider criminal bankruptcy without separating it from oligarch crime, which represents a great danger for the development of a viable and competitive economy.

In practice, it is rather difficult to prosecute the perpetrators for criminal activities in the sphere of bankruptcy, including bankruptcy as a method of illegal seizures, especially when these activities are

masterminded behind the scenes by oligarchic cells [7].

Subjective causes affecting detecting and resolving illegal bankruptcies committed by oligarch criminality are acquiring an increasingly relevant meaning. Such causes could and should include the symbiosis of the State economic sector and criminal business sector, due to which the latter can use the valuable complex of the administrative resources of the State on the most advantageous terms for itself. In their turn, the investigative bodies often decline to prosecute citing the smallest doubts in favour of the alleged perpetrator. Investigators and junior detectives generally have insufficient knowledge of the main provisions of the tax and civil legislation, which cannot but tell on the effectiveness of their professional activities.

The lack of finely tuned judicial practice in criminal bankruptcy cases accounts for the fact that in recent years the actual level of overall economic crime has, on the whole, increased.

Uneven periods of development of economic criminality have led in the long-term to changes in conditions and causes of the development of a criminal personality on a scale more dangerous for the economy, of a certain "fast-track and better quality" course of development of the economic criminal mind.

Based on the afore-said, it is possible to make a conclusion that prosecuting a perpetrator for

criminal actions related to bankruptcy in reality is rather complicated. When carrying out illegal bankruptcy the oligarch criminality possesses sophisticated methods and ways of distorting the accounting information, which, as a consequence, requires conducting a most vigorous analytical study as well as additional checking measures. This shows that detecting the signs of such a type of bankruptcy requires a thorough analysis of the financial schemes of the debtor as well as the ways of their implementation. The intellectual level of such a type of economic crime should not be underestimated. Overall the level of protection of economic relations is far from the mark, and the extreme latent character pertaining to economic crime, the inadequate legislation in the sphere of bankruptcy as well as the crime-driving "symbiosis" of criminal and State economic structures do not help to achieve any significant improvement of the situation.

There should not be any discrepancy between the letter of the law and the direct implementation of this letter. The State should not, at the same time, declare war on illegal seizures on the one hand, protecting the owner and adopting for that purpose various economic leverage, and, on the other hand, come to agreements with corporate raiders, using for that methods of an extra-legal nature.

Oligarch crime and, going hand-in-hand with it, criminal bankruptcy most directly constitute strategic, often uncontrolled, destabilisation of the economic sector of any developed or developing State. Since ancient times humankind has not existed without criminal activities of various types, and therefore it would be naive to believe that crime can completely be eradicated. Nobody sets him/herself such a task. However, the State and society must exert all tangible efforts of both an academic/intellectual and a practically applicable level, to a realistic degree and without harm to other sectors of economy. It is important to take into consideration the best practices of other developed countries, and build on the basis of these practices the most suitable system of methods combating the economic outrage of criminal entities, taking into account the peculiarities of the Republic of Kazakhstan and its economy [7].

Thus, premeditated illegal bankruptcy, especially on the part of the developed network of oligarch structures, creates a threat to economic security not only of the State but also of every individual, impacting him/her in a direct and long-term way. Bankruptcy is causing damage to the property interests of State and non-State business entities. Social consequences of oligarch crime and expanding criminal bankruptcy are not just negative, they are catastrophic, especially if due attention is not paid to them.

Referrenges

1 V.V. Bandurin, V.Y. Laritsky. The problem of administration of bankrupt businesses under the conditions of transitional economy. Moscow, 2015, 200 pages.

2 A.R. Mikrosh. "The Conservative": "The State and oligarchs", No. 18 (34) of 30.05.2015, 100 pages.

3 I.Y. Mihkalev. Criminal bankruptcy. St.Petersburg: "Legal Centre Press" Publishing house, 2011, 115 pages.

4 N.A. Lopashenko. Crimes in the sphere of economic activities. Rostov-on-Don, 1999, 14 pages.

5 V.V. Luneyev. Criminality of the XX century. World, regional and Russia's tendencies. Moscow, 1997, 239 pages.

6 A.A. Zemtsov, T.Y. Osipova. Basic economic-and-financial knowledge as the foundation of the economic-and-financial competence of laypersons. // Problems of finance and accounting. 2016, No.1, pp 24-31.

7 O.N. Makarova. Economic analysis as a tool of counteracting criminal phenomena in the economy. Abstract of a dissertation for a PhD in economics. St.Petersburg, 2016.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**LANGUAGE AND CROSS BORDER FREE TRADE:
AN INTERDISCIPLINARY APPROACH**

Dr. Chander Bhushan Nagar

is Associate Professor, Department of Political Science,
National Defence Academy, Khadakwasla, Pune affiliated to Jawaharlal Nehru
University, New Delhi, India. He is associated with writings on International
Relations at South & Southeast Asia and interdisciplinary work.

He can be contacted at cbn77jk@gmail.com

Dr. Barnali Bhowmick

is Assistant Professor at Department of Bengali, Dasaratha Deb Memorial
College, Khowai-799201, Tripura (Government of Tripura) affiliated to
Tripura University (A Central University), Suryamaninagar, Tripura, India.
She is active on the issues of linguistics and has several publications to her
credit. She can be contacted at barnali.b.ghosh@gmail.com



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-14>

Abstract: Language is a bridge which works to interact between the states across the border. It is so because language is a mode which helps one to feel and express their views, thereby acts as a medium to integrate the two sovereign states. The provision of border haats at international border in the Indian state of Tripura between India and Bangladesh is a set example which justifies the above mentioned fact. These haats provides an opportunity to flourish local economics along border areas of the concerned state in view of the fact, that such interaction has been possible with the use of a common language as it leads to the exchange of ideas between two different states. Also, several new kinds of words, phrases, loan words, borrowings, hybrid and symbolic words are being used by communities during business. Further, the interaction at border haats often come across new sentences those ought to be legitimate expressions with a follow up of its linguistic parameter of phonology, morphology and syntactic structure. With this, lexicography can also be built up with this interaction. The development of any language is based upon its pace of interaction, its course of continuation during interaction among the speakers which tends to identify opportunity for its development. In this way such kind of professional development is very much relevant that's why the socio, economic and cultural development occurs across the border. This research paper is an interdisciplinary approach which tries to analyse how language acts as a tool for the development of socio, economic and cultural issues across the border. To prove this hypothesis, following module shall needs to investigate: (a) How two different accents of language could be used in a proper format? One can find these variations in the use of language being at the haat during business hours. (b) A survey of border haat during business hours shall be carried out to obtain data to prove this hypothesis.

Keywords: Border Haat, Corridor, Language, Socio, Economic, Culture

Recommended citation: Dr. Chander Bhushan Nagar, Dr. Barnali Bhowmick. LANGUAGE AND CROSS BORDER FREE TRADE: AN INTERDISCIPLINARY APPROACH. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 160-168 (2019).

"The first point we must make about language, than, is that it is a social, rather than a biological aspect of human life. "Fransis.W. Nelson". "The Structure of American English".

Introduction:

The North Eastern region of India shares land border with Bangladesh, Bhutan, China, Myanmar and Nepal and has agreements of overland trade with these countries through Land Custom Stations notified under Section 7 of the Customs Act, 1962. While for trading through Land Custom Stations situated on Bangladesh and Bhutan border, there is a Free Trade Agreement (SAFTA). Whereas, Border Trade Agreement have been entered into with China and Myanmar. Border trade is different from trade through air, land or sea ports as trade through ports involves clearance through customs and has large volume. Border trade in contrast is "over-land trade" by way of "exchange of commodities" from a bi-laterally agreed list by people living along both sides of the international border. For permitting locally produced commodities, to be traded as per prevailing customary practices on both sides of the India-Myanmar border, an agreement on border trade between India and Myanmar was signed on 21st January, 1994 and operationalized on 12th April, 1995. The Agreement envisages that the border trade will take place through Custom Posts at Moreh in Manipur and Zowkhatthar in Mizoram, corresponding to Tamu and Rhi in

Myanmar. 40 items are permitted for the border trade between India and Myanmar, with 5% duty. Presently, most of the border trade takes place only through the Moreh Post. This paper has been focusing on border trade between India Bangladesh while discussing its relevance based on an interdisciplinary approach that border trade is an inclusion of different factors like culture, language and other issues while one discuss the nature of trade relations. Out of these factors, language plays important role in the development of border trade with a fact that, both Indian State of Tripura and Bangladesh have Bengali speaking majority of population. To look into it, there is a need to look into India-Bangladesh relations.

India-Bangladesh Relations:

India and Bangladesh share a long history of enduring economic partnership and bi-lateral development. The relationship between the two countries has been one based on mutual trust and cooperation. Our multi-faceted economic relations encompass trade, credit arrangements, soft transit facilities and joint ventures in energy and connectivity. Both the countries have benefitted largely through the growing economic ties. It has exercised an overall stabilizing effect on our political relations too. Over

the last fifteen years, the annual development assistance to Bangladesh from India has ranged between 20 million to 700 million rupees and now a landmark 2 billion dollars recently extended during Prime Minister Modi's visit in June 2015. This is double the Line of credit (LoC) of \$1 Billion extended during PM Manmohan Singh's visit in September 2011. At that time, this was the single biggest LoC India had ever extended to any country in one announcement (and the single largest that Bangladesh had received from any single donor). For both countries, it reflected a new confidence in each other in advancing and expanding their bilateral relations after over four decades of latent mutual suspicion and ups and downs. Of the earlier tranche, \$200 million was converted into a grant (announced by President Pranab Mukherjee when he undertook his first trip abroad, and that too to Bangladesh, after he assumed the nation's highest office), which was used by Bangladesh to commence ground breaking on its ambitious Padma Bridge project, designed to exponentially facilitate east-to-west connectivity across Bangladesh. The remaining 80% was entirely used on rail/road connectivity up gradation and modernization. The relationship now appears to be acquiring a new momentum in the recent times to take it to greater heights in tune with Prime Minister Narendra Modi's neighbourhood outreach initiative.

Some of the related and important aspects of the outreach include grant of visas and the historic Land Boundary Agreement and Bangladesh's effort to provide India with a "Power Corridor". The protocol on reciprocal visa facilitation was revised after over 13 years in 2013 - again a reflection of increasing trust and confidence in each other. Concomitant with this has been India's permission to Bangladesh to open Consular offices in Mumbai and Guwahati while India will open 2 additional offices in Bangladesh.

The trading relationship between India and Bangladesh is currently of special interest in both countries for a number of reasons. Firstly, there are urgent and longstanding concerns in Bangladesh arising from the perennial, large bilateral trade deficit with India, and from the large volumes of informal imports from India across the land border which avoid Bangladesh import duties. These concerns have been particularly acute on the Bangladesh side in the context of discussions between the two governments of the possibility of a bilateral free trade agreement along the lines of the India-Sri Lanka FTA. Secondly, even though (because of the disparity in the size of the two economies) India's trading relationship with Bangladesh is much less significant for it than it is for Bangladesh, closer economic integration with Bangladesh is nevertheless seen as a very important way of reducing the economic and political isolation of the seven Indian

eastern and north eastern states from the rest of the country. Finally, both countries have long shared common objectives for closer economic integration within the South Asia region, and these have recently been reemphasised by signing on to SAFTA, which is to come into force in January 2006. Under SAFTA, the preferential tariffs agreed in the various rounds of SAPTA-- so far largely ineffective in generating much intra-regional trade-- will continue, but a number of ambitious new objectives have been enunciated. These include the eventual elimination of tariffs and non-tariff barriers on trade between the members, the harmonisation of Customs procedures and documentation, the facilitation of banking relationships, and cooperation and improvements in the infrastructure for regional trade and cross-border investments. India's Development Assistance to Bangladesh between 2006-07 & 2015-16 out of total of INR 13 billion were distributed over a number of key sectors as indicated. As a matter of fact bulk of the development assistance to the tune of 74% went into multi-sectoral projects and the crucial transport sector. Need/event based emergency assistance came third in terms of quantum at about 12% of the total package. The main projects undertaken from the USD 200 million grant included Small Development Projects (SDP's), Community Development Projects (COP's) and connectivity related

projects such as construction of Akhaura - Agartala Rail link, setting up an inland port at Ashuganj and setting up a manufacturing unit for railway coaches.

Trade Relations:

While developmental and infrastructure projects are important, it is universally recognized the bilateral trade plays an extremely important role in promoting and strengthening economic relations between countries. In this area, India and Bangladesh bilateral trade presents an extremely complex and disappointing scenario. As immediate neighbour, India with long land boundary, size, population, growing market and a huge consumer market, presents an ideal opportunity for Bangladesh to sell its products. But the key question is whether Bangladesh produces the goods that can sell easily and competitively in the Indian market. Since 1982 and particularly after Bangladesh moved on the path of economic liberalization, bilateral trade has been improving steadily. In 2011-2012, India's total export to Bangladesh reached 5.84 billion US dollars. This does not obviously take into account the substantial volume of 'illegal or informal' exports that takes place continuously and is estimated at a substantive figure. A high percentage of BD's import from India is in the nature of inputs (cotton) meant for the production of its main export item (readymade garments); an area in which the country has championed itself. India's annual earnings from

trade with Bangladesh is somewhere near 14 to 15 billion dollars. On the other hand, in contrast, Bangladesh's exports to India have been significantly less. In 2011-2012, Bangladesh's exports to India reached only 584.64 million US dollars. In 2014-15, BD export figure further dropped down to USD 396 million. In the current scenario the total bilateral trade volume of USD 6.5 billion looks impressive but the sheen is lost when one looks at the country's exports to India that account for a mere USD 500 million leaving a high trade deficit.

Informal and illegal trade between two counties:

Ever since Bangladesh's independence there has been a substantial informal unrecorded trade across the India-Bangladesh land borders. Much of this trade is quasi legal and is best characterized as "informal" rather than illegal, because there is wide participation by local people in the border areas, and the trade generally bypasses Customs posts. At the other extreme there is trade which goes in larger quantities-mostly by truck-through the formal legal Customs and other channels, but which involves explicitly illegal practices such as under invoicing, misclassification and bribery of Customs and other officials, and which in Bangladesh is sometimes called "technical" smuggling. All the literature on the India-Bangladesh informal trade confirms that this trade is essentially one-way, from India to Bangladesh. Leaving aside gold, silver and

currency which is smuggled into India in part to pay for Indian goods, smuggled "bootleg" merchandise exports from Bangladesh exports to India have been estimated at only about 3% of smuggled bootleg Indian exports to Bangladesh. Thus, it is very much significant for both the countries to find out ways so that this kind of illegal trade could be lessened out. One such policy option is to enhance border along trade. A few factors seem in case of India-Bangladesh so far as border trade is concern. In other words a new approach in the form of identification of a few factors responsible for the enhancement of border trade is "issue of common language i.e. Bengali Language across Indian State of Tripura and Bangladesh". Language is a bridge which works to interact between the states across the border. It is so because language is a mode which helps one to feel and express their views, thereby acts as a medium to integrate the two sovereign states. The provision of border haats at international border in the Indian state of Tripura between India and Bangladesh is a set example which justifies the above mentioned fact. These haats provides an opportunity to flourish local economics along border areas of the concerned state in view of the fact, that such interaction has been possible with the use of a common language as it leads to the exchange of ideas between two different states. Also, several new kinds of words, phrases, loan words, borrowings, hybrid and symbolic

words are being used by communities during business. Further, the interaction at border haats often come across new sentences those ought to be legitimate expressions with a follow up of its linguistic parameter of phonology, morphology and syntactic structure. With this, lexicography can also be built up with this interaction. The development of any language is based upon its pace of interaction, its course of continuation during interaction among the speakers which tends to identify opportunity for its development. In this way such kind of professional development is very much relevant that's why the socio, economic and cultural development occurs across the border.

This research paper is an interdisciplinary approach which tries to analyse how language acts as a tool for the development of socio, economic and cultural issues across the border. To prove this hypothesis, following module shall needs to investigate: (a) How two different ascents of language could be used in a proper format? One can find these variations in the use of language being at the haat during business hours. (b) A survey of border haat during

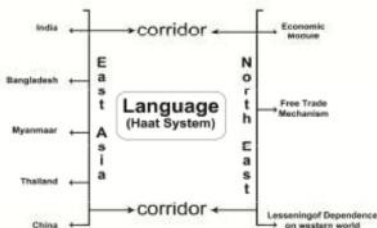
business hours shall be carried out to obtain data to prove this hypothesis.

Border Haat:

A hitherto defunct Mughal era border haat (weekly border market) was reopened by Commerce Ministers of India and Bangladesh in Meghalaya in 2011, marking a new high in the on-going bonhomie and trade links between the two neighbouring countries. Border haat means makeshift bazaar/ market at a certain point on zero lines of the India-Bangladesh borders allowing villagers of both the countries to market and shop each other's products once a week. Border haats are in high demand by people on both sides, living in remote enclaves and hilly areas, as they find it difficult to buy and sell products needed in day-to-day life. The two nations started border trade in April 1972 - only months after Bangladesh became independent. However, it was cancelled a year later because of rampant smuggling along the 4,096 kilometres of border that the two countries share.

General Characteristics of Border Haat:

1. The border haat is a common marketplace for both countries to boost local business and trade between the two neighbours. The commodities sold here are free of duty while traders can use Bangladeshi Taka (BDT) and Indian Rupees (INR) and/or barter system for the transaction. The traders can exchange their currencies in banks operating along the two border districts.



2. Border haat at first was originally scheduled to be launched on April 14 of 2011, coinciding with Pauela Baishakh, the first day of Bengali New Year. However, India and Bangladesh opened their first border haat on July 23, 2011 located at Tura in Meghalaya, India. The second border haat started operation at Dolura in Sunamganj district in Bangladesh on May 01, 2012. Set on the zero line along the North-Eastern State of Meghalaya in India, it occupies an area of 70-square meters and serves the villagers living inside five kilometre radius on both sides of the border. The haat starts working on every Tuesday from 10:30 am to 5:00 pm while it sits from 9:30 am to 4:00 pm from November to March during the winter. Close to 1,800 individuals, visit the haat for the purpose of purchases. The enthusiasm and participation is more pronounced among Bangladeshis than it is with Indians. Well beyond the 25 registered pass holding vendors of each nation are seen selling goods within the haat premises. That is because the original pass-holder sublets his space and adjacent aisle to non-pass-holders.

3. Haats are equipped with market sheds to facilitate trade by 25 vendors from each side, who have been identified and trained by both countries to sell their produce, medical and security booths, and fencing of the border haat areas. However, the facilities are inadequate to cater the larger number of consumers residing in the border areas.

4. A border haat, by definition, is managed by a five-member Haat Management Committee, constituted by the two nations. It maintains a list of the authorized vendors and buyers as per the Memoranda of Understanding (MoU). The haat is held on a fixed day of the week, and for transaction the currencies of the two nations are used. The designated border haat areas are exempted from regulations of passport and visa.

5. The haat markets generally have two entry and exit points, one from Bangladesh territory for Bangladeshis and another from the Indian Territory for Indians. Only the residents of the border districts are allowed to sell their products in the haats and the number of vendors is typically limited to 25 from each country. However, on an average 1,000 people from each side are allowed to visit the haat with passes.

6. Locally produced vegetables, food items, fruits, betel leaf, betel nuts, spices, fish, chicken, bamboo, and bamboo-made materials, grass, gamchha, lungi, dao, plough, axe, spade, chisel, locally produced garments, melamine products, processed food items, fruit juice, handicraft items are the general items being sold in the haats. A detailed table covering aspects of type and volume is included as a part of the appendix. Newer offerings are elaborated in the recommendations.

7. As per rules of business at its inception, a given buyer is able to

shop here worth up to USD 50.00 or equivalent to BDT 4,200.00, on each market day in a week. However, in June 2013, the buying limit at the border haat was raised. Bangladeshis living in the border areas with India are now able to buy goods worth up to USD 100.00 in local currency at border haats (weekly markets) on any given day. The Foreign Exchange Policy Department of Bangladesh Bank has accordingly coordinated with their Authorized Foreign Exchange Dealers (ADs) to accommodate the revised purchase limit.

Linguistic relevance of Border Haat:

To understand the role of language in the management of cross border trade with reference to border haat a case study of Kamalasagar border haat situated at Sipahijaladistrict of Indian State of Tripura has been taken up. A border haat has been setup between Sipahijala District under India and Brahmanbaria district, Chittagong Central Division under Bangladesh at Kamalasagar international border. It is important to note that people living with in the 5 kilometre radius of the international border speaks dialect of Bengali language. Though multilingual speech is an identified feature provided, entire interaction has been based upon understanding of common Bengali expressions. Following is the nature of multilingual exchange between the communities of India and Bangladesh:

India	Bangladesh
<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The South Tripura area of Tripura State uses Noyakhali language (It's a dialect of Bengali).2. Kokborok is another tribal language being used at Tripura (It's a language of Tibet Burmese origin).3. The security agencies especially personnel of Border Security Force (BSF) uses Hindi (India's national language) for conversation. Although due to diversity of identity among the personnel other languages of different regions of India may also be in use.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The Bengali is being used as dialect as well as standard language at Bangladesh.2. The Brahmanbaria district has certain expressions of Noyakhali language (It's a dialect of Bengali).3. At some adjoining areas of the international border people may use Shelletti version of Bengali language. (Shellette is a district of Bangladesh).4. Some way the Noyakhali language is mixed up with Shelletti words.5. The officials of Bangladesh Border Guard (BBG) converse in Bengali and English language.

Effective expressions:

Border haats are cultural boost up centres for both communities living along the borders. The common growth of cultural assimilations, societal contacts and multilingual conjunctions occurred. The border haats are a way by which linguistic expressions plays a very important role in the development of confidence building measures between two countries. The traders and consumers often use dialects during business in the form of loan words, borrowing, hybrid and symbolic words those are an exclusive feature of border haat conversations. As a matter of fact, this entire exercise is conceived of Bengali language as mother language. However certain exclusive identified remarks of socio linguistic expression during business hours are as follows:

1. Borrowed word, loan words are adopted by speakers from each other during interaction. A loan word can also be called as borrowing. It is a consequence of cultural contact between two language communities. For e.g. some words of Noyakhali

language were adopted by the Shelletti version of Bengali speakers.

2. Phonal borrowing (Phonetic borrowing) may also be adopted by people across the border.

3. Since the area of border haat has been dominated by Noyakhali pattern of dialect therefore, sentence patterns are mixed up with other dialects of the adjoining areas which are called as Code-Mixing. The pattern of code mixing comprise of two or more dialects at same time.

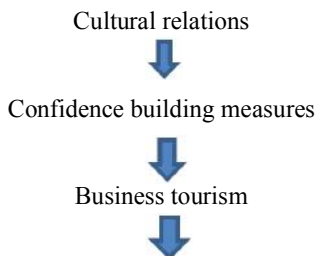
4. The border haat area one perceives as feeling motive (there are two types of motives: feeling motive and prestige motive). This is so because traders have adopted various words from local dialects thereby to make themselves expressive for business purpose.

5. A lexical gap, a hole in the pattern (sentence) is a word or other

form that does not exist in the same language but shall be permitted on the basis of grammatical rules of the concerned language. This lexical gap is an identified feature of the border haat conversations.

Concluding remarks:

Language has been used as catalyst to boost up:



It leads to socio-economic development of border region through cross border trade.

References

1. Position Paper on Border Haat Markets. Bangladesh Enterprise Institute, House # 2, Road # 54, Gulshan-2, Dhaka-1212, Bangladesh.
2. Declaration between Bangladesh & India during joint visit of Prime Minister of India to Bangladesh- Notun Projonmo- Nayi Disha.
3. Sharmadha Srinivasan - Assessing India's Infrastructure aid diplomacy Indian council on Global Relations, Gateway House.
4. India-Bangladesh Relations: An Enduring Economic Partnership 20 of 21. Vivekananda International Foundation. Source: <http://www.vifindia.org>
5. Nafees Intiaz Islam - Bangadesh India Relationship: A new Dimension in the region.
6. Joint statement by India & Bangladesh on First Meeting of the India Bangladesh Joint Consultative Commission May 7, 2012.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**SOLID WASTE TRANSPORTATION PRACTICE AND
CHALLENGE OF ADDIS ABABA CITY**

Massreshaw Assnakew Abebe

Addis Ababa city Cleansing Management office, Addis Ababa,
Ethiopia; email: lifelongmass@gmail.com



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-15>

Abstract: Uncontrolled growth of the urban population in developing countries in recent years has made solid waste management an important issue. Very often, a substantial amount of total expenditures is spent on the waste transportation of solid waste by city authorities. Optimization of the routing system for collection and transport of solid waste thus constitutes an important component of an effective solid waste management system. The transportation system of waste management must be effective to solve 3 important things one was the amount of waste to transport fast; timely and minimum cost. Second transportation the waste with protective and managing of the environment and the waste generation area. Thirdly always transporting waste publicitization waste generation reduce as the source and segregation was applicable because of keeping your car maintainance time long. In Addis Ababa the waste transportation system happened always two things:- 1.the inefficient carried amount of waste, 2.due to traffic jam, car maintenance and worker discipline problem around 25% of the city waste did not transported. So to solve those problem to use different practical measure:-1.To change the transportation system from government to privatization with incentive.2.To apply strong law of waste collection, storage and transportation system to save our environment and the minimum capital of the country.3 To appreciate the waste recycling and reusing waste from the source to industrazation practice in the city because of we cost more than 70 million dollar to used the transportation of waste in Addis Ababa city to change this modality by using sound resource society principle and methodology. In Addition to this advanced the collection and transporting waste control system by using GIS and other controlling technology to determine the minimum cost/distance efficient collection paths for transporting the solid wastes to the landfill or recycling center. The transport trips save time, money(maintenance, fuel e.t.c) ,energy, health of the car, sound environmental impacts (emission of waste transportation) and increase efficiency and effectiveness of the work practice definitely and changeable.

Keywords: efficient, transport, short path, clean city, cost effective, emission

Recommended citation: Massreshaw Assnakew Abebe. SOLID WASTE TRANSPORTATION PRACTICE AND CHALLENGE OF ADDIS ABABA CITY. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 169-181 (2019).

1. Introduction

Solid waste management (SWM) may be defined as the discipline associated with the control of the generation, storage, collection, transfer, transport, processing and disposal of solid waste in a manner that is in accord with the best principles of public health, economics, engineering, conservation, aesthetics, and other environmental considerations, and that is also responsive to public attitudes [3].

It is an essential service that is provided for the protection of the environment and public health, as well as to promote hygiene, recover materials, avoid waste, reduce waste quantities, emissions and residuals, and prevent the spread of diseases [11].

The capital city of Ethiopia is Addis Ababa ("New Flower"), located almost at the centre of the country. Addis Ababa is the diplomatic capital for Africa (OAU, ECA), regional headquarters like UNDP, UNICEF, UNHCR, FAO, ILF, ICO, and ITU. According to the Central Statistical Agency, the population of the city is 6.6 million inhabitants in 2017 that live in 10 sub-cities and 119 woreda divided for administrative purpose. Addis Ababa is a centre for modern economic and social activities that infrastructure services are found relatively in better situation than other cities of Ethiopia.

As in many African cities, Addis Ababa suffers from insufficient infrastructure and deficient services to guarantee sanitation and waste

management for the level of development expected by its status of diplomatic Capital city of Africa. The level of coverage of refuse collection is estimated at around 75%, while the remainder of the waste ends up on streets, public areas, water courses and the surrounding environment.

Like in most future megacities under fast development, in Addis Ababa the fate of postconsumer materials, organic waste and other residuals are not well known. This is a result of the lack of a system of data collection along the whole waste management chain. Since in the past years there were no systematic recording and assessment of the amount of waste collected and transported by the municipal or private enterprises, and the final disposal site is lacking a weighing bridge to register the amount of residues landfilled, almost no robust data that helps assess the performance of the waste management, or to determine to what extent the streams of valuable materials recovered and recycled is available.

The previous situation is compounded by the fact that large amounts of recyclables are recovered by an army of informal waste pickers, which is practically invisible to the waste management authorities, who buy materials from households or scavenges for recyclables on the streets and at the final disposal sites.

However just collecting the waste from different parts of city does not solve the problem; it requires

disposing the waste in environmentally safe and economically sustainable Poor collection and inadequate transportation are responsible for the accumulation of MSW at every nook and corner. The management of MSW is going through a critical phase, due to the unavailability of suitable facilities to treat and dispose of the larger amount of MSW generated daily in metropolitan cities. Unscientific disposal causes an adverse impact on all components of the environment and human health manner. An effective solid waste management system is needed to ensure better human health and safety.

In general, an effective solid waste management system should include one or more of the following options: waste collection and transportation; resource recovery through waste processing; waste transportation without recovery of resources, i.e., reduction of volume, toxicity, or other physical/chemical properties of waste to make it suitable for final disposal; and disposal on land, i.e., environmentally safe and sustainable disposal in landfills [19&20; 9; 3].

Most often, it appears difficult to minimize two variables - cost and environmental impact - simultaneously. Hence, the balance that needs to be struck is to reduce the overall environmental impact of the waste management system as far as possible within an acceptable cost limit. The new Paradigm for sustainable solid waste management,

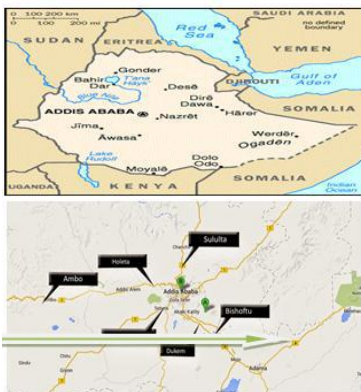
as it stems from the need for resources conservation and is best expressed in the EU policy from those stated that to increase level of service will need to be provided at the minimum possible cost, as the public will not be able to bear large increases in its waste charges. Therefore, the sector of waste collection and transport (WC&T) attracts particular interest regarding its potential for service optimization as: (a) waste management systems with more recyclables' streams usually require more transport [17]; and (b) this sector already absorbs a disproportionately large fraction of the municipal budget available to waste management [10]. Service optimization, both in terms of quality and costs can only be achieved using advanced decision support tools, modeling the many different components of an integrated waste management system [1, 12, 16and 18]. Optimization of WC&T making use of the GIS (fleet management method) may provide large economic and environmental savings through the reduction of travel time, distance, fuel consumption and pollutants emissions [18], [2],[4,7,8,13,14,15], but in our case we selected the fleet management collection and transporting service management.

The aim of this work was to develop a methodology for the optimization of the waste collection system from house to house, institution to institution and transportation system based on our resource, our waste amount and

fleet management technology. The strategy consisted of replacing and reallocating the waste collection bins as well as rescheduling waste collection via the resource of the city, the amount of waste concentration and using fleet management routing technology optimization and its benefits of practice such transportation solving technology. To minimize the collection speed of waste time, to use short path distance travelled to transport waste, To adjust the man power, To get primary continuous data and etc. General consequently, to reduce the cost or financial budget about it, To protect the society in the right way and To clear manage the environmental costs To scarify by the waste transportation system.

2. Material and method

2 .1.The Municipality of Addis Ababa and its waste collection scheme



Graph 1:-Addis Ababa was the central part of Ethiopia and its saw map

Geographically, Addis Ababa is located between 8055'and 90 0 5'N Latitude and 380 40' and 38050' E Longitude. The city is located at the center of Ethiopia with an area of 540 km² of which 18.174 m² is rural and its altitude ranges from 2000m - 2800 masl (6).

Addis Ababa is a seat both for Federal Democratic Republic of Ethiopia (FDRE) and Oromiya National Regional State Government. It is bordered with Oromiya National Regional State in all directions. There are 10 sub-cities (Kifle ketema) and about 119 woreda (AACA 2010).

2.2. Waste collection in the Municipality of Addis Ababa city

Waste amount, way of collection, method of collection used and other related activities to list them. A better development of the recycling system in the future will require a restructuring of both collection and transportation systems in order to minimize costs and optimize waste collection resources and transportation activities and its default [3]. The system was to identify how the waste easily collected and transported at the initial point or the optimum scenario for waste collection and transportation from stored waste, in terms of minimizing collection time, travelled distance, man-power, and other costs to protect our life.

Finally, The researched believed that to modified the collection and transportation system in the new modality from compared as the current practice from the city of

Addis Ababa might be important because the new ideology could be changed the waste collection and transportation modality from the house level and there is no soil and air direct contamination and minimize transportation, disposing and other side cost may be reduced directly and indirectly more than this save the health of society and the environment surely.

2.3. Method

To develop the collection, the transportation system, the whole information of the system and present primary data generated

3. Result and Discussion

3.1. Practice of waste transportation system

3.1.1 Government practice

Table 1. types of car in each subcity either side loading container or compactors and its generation

s.no	subcity	woreda	Share enterprise and skip point	Generation solid waste m ³	Types of care to transport waste			
					Cargo carrier	Side loader	renolet	compactors
1	Arada	10	3	606.27	3	1	0	5
2	lideta	10	3	575.14	1	1	1	5
3	kirkose	11	3	634.18	1	1	0	6
4	Addis ketma	10	6	731.83	6	1	1	5
5	gulele	10	5	767.00	23			3
6	yeka	14	10	970.88	20	2	0	4
7	Akaki	11	6	519.47	15			3
8	nefassilek	14	10	906.6	19	0	0	4
9	kolefe	15	15	1229.17	19	1	1	4
10	Bole	15	13	885.72	25	0	0	4
total		119	74	7826.26	132	7	3	44

From the above table the share enterprise numbers were 74 in 119 woreda and 10 subcity to tal of waste without private instutions 7826.26 m3 waste transported daily by using 132 cargo conaing cars,7 side loader,3 reanolet rolling and 44 compress compactors cars.No to understand that the number of car was almost nice but the transportation was ineffient because of different expression what the system was in active from those I explain some practice and problem in Addis Ababa.:

1.The maintainace system that was the car mantained when they stoped

before that nothing to pre-mantenance, washing, greace and other practice not to do so the car disinctioning than working time.To solve this problem the transportation system simple privatization to reduce the govermental brocracy , inefficent follow up and undisciplene workers,other way to increase the number of compactors car this way was waste of time,money and enviroment so to used the 1st sytem to change business based work and clearly define the responsibility body take off and paid situation and follow

strongly, continuously and straight.

2. To appreciate and prepare incentive the waste reduction and recycling applicable technology producers

3. To strictly negotiate the take off organization to change the manual system to technological system and easily access in the citizen. In addition to this to prepare waste road map and when and where to change full system and create clean city how the motor and how to drive the car in what speed to reach the plan

4. To change the payment system and way of waste handling practice to minimize the transportation cost, the disposing and mitigation

cost of the environment at the school, household and each institutional responsibility to do something to produce waste and how to hand or to pay the handlers how much cost it before started any activities like other mandatory instrument. That means to applied polluter pay principle and extended producer responsibility of their producing or generated waste.

5. To change the educational modality of environment to minimize the biodiversity pollution by waste generated, collected, transported, recycled and disposing sound law and pollution must be measured properly



Figure 1:-when waste stored the consequence environment pollution and how used the compactors



Figure 2:-Loading of side loader cars and the problem of the environment



Figure 3:-Old model waste load and rolled it

Table 2:-Waste transportation by monthly average and the vehicle trip

no	subcity	Total waste dispose	Average used car	Trip of the average	Use of resource average
1	Arada	214314	8	521	22,286,305
2	lideta	152148	8	3600	20,681,332
3	kirkose	235032	8	5484	25,152,880
4	Addis ketma	20120400	13	2160	30,120400
5	gulele	235472	26	2880	25,127,480
6	yeka	299127	26	10440	40,921,454.5
7	Akaki	159056.1	18	2520	25,315049
8	nefässilek	563698.8	23	3960	65,702,892
9	kolefe	523800	25	4860	60,140,000
10	Bole	459630	29	5760	55,366,700
total	10	22,962,678	184	42,185	370,814,493

From the above table the total routine trip was 42,185 time it average city wise and the amount of waste transported by 184 cars was 22,962,678 m3 or 6,062,147 tone waste collected and disposed from this those amount of waste transported by compactors it took 119 trip daily the cost of transportation was the minimum 5 millions and maximum 20 millions. Understanding from the table to increase the size of the car minimize the trip and the transportation cost and kept the emission of waste production gas and the fuel of the transported car also decreased at the same times clean the storage and house hold waste timely and efficiently. Changing the transport system mean to reduced pollution, the cost of transportation and Energy. So the relation between handling, collection, maintenance of the cars, the cost, the trip and the emission of the environment by the carrying material and the car emission simple minimized the whole waste management and operational activities.

The case of used advance and practical technology increased the transportation efficiency, effectiveness and clear nd quality information how much carried, transported and cost to compare day today to manage and organize when and where the mistake happed.

3.1.2. Private practice

Table 3: private association types of car, institution number

no	Private Ass.name	#of cars	Trip of cars for one month	Working institution #	Disposing waste average	Payment monthly average
1	Dynamic	9	571	115	17474	1568466.24
2	Rose	9	837	71	17067	1531933.92
3	Solomon G/kidan	2	72	47	233.76	210038.40
4	ATE	3	128	66	3552	318827.52
5	Serkalem &Asechalew	2	144	40	3068.18	302940
6	yes	5	449	118	6986	627063
7	Hedasa	2	72	51	1297.53	116777.76
8	Anteneh	6	655	122	14022	1258614.72
9	Tigest &muluya	4	230	79	11240	1011600
10	Helen	2	33	47	259	23247.12
11	Meleskama AMAN	2	104	44	1812	162645.12
12	Adolyan	2	252	33	7387	663057.12
13	Gedelawit	2	85	25	3043	273139.68
14	Yesakore	4	122	34	976	87605.76
15	Ach ti Ach	5	196	91	8176	734057.28
16	Ach As A.F	2	48	40	1936	173775.36
17	Eleyoyland	2	61	38	2095.4	188585.76
18	konjet	1	24	44	911	81771.36
19	Genet	2	57	37	3752	336779.52
20	Webet	2	145	40	6154	552383.04
21	Dawit	2	82	42	2767	249030
22	Amare &tebele	4	51	40	2070	185803.2
23	Selamawite	2	5	4	156	14002.56
24	Haile Alemayhu	2	69	57	2173	195048.48
total	24	86	4,492	1,335	118,607.9	10,867,193

From the above table the private association to contribute the waste collect and transport in the minimum standard of their payment means the share enterprise paid the government only the waste from house to temporary place 90 birr for 1 m³ and the same payment paid the private association to collect and transport to disposal site. Therefore 4492 trip and 1,335 institution and 118607.9 m³ waste collected and transported from each institutions in below twice a week. So the government to save two things the waste collection and transportation should be privatized and paid depending of the efficiency and quality of service upgrade the payment to solve the trip and any storage waste collect and transport timely and save way.

3.1.3. The Division of the car and the transport system

Divided the vehicle into 3 types:

1. A-type vehicle: far from the disposal and recycling center are selected from the Temporary storage area. The order in which stored wastes have to be visited and is calculated based upon the proximity of stored wastes. Then the optimal path is generated for each vehicle from the specific storage and pile areas. In this process, clusters of stored wastes are formed and each cluster is allocated to a vehicle. The clusters are made by taking the time into account, which may be plus or minus the total working hours for the day. In such cases, the last cluster may be merged with other clusters by increasing the total

working hours. The subcity under such circumstance yeka, Bole, Akaki and Gulele total skip points in those area are 34. they needed the types of car more waste car because of far from the disposing area So they had to use more that 100 m³ containers collected waste from 34 near far area easily transported more amount of waste to analyze the cost effective and the efficiency of waste transported means to change the payment system based on distance and effectiveness of the waste collected and transportation either recycling and disposing centers. The Proposed payment will be 1.8 birr by 1 kg or 180 birr for 1 m³. The allowed car types were larger size because of collection and transportation of the waste major effect for cost, Time and quality.

2. B-type vehicle: middle of the disposing area is performed as done for the A-type vehicle. Based upon the distance of the stored waste are formed, which is the maximum capacity that a B-type vehicle can clear at a time because of near the disposing place. The total time required to clear each cluster through the optimal path is calculated and displayed to the user. Now the user can select a subset of clusters to be cleared by a vehicle. Once the user enters the group of clusters to be cleared, a final optimal path between these clusters is generated. The total time required and other results are calculated. In addition to this the cluster used low cost of transport because it near to the disposing or recycling center

and including Kirkos, lideta, Arada and Addis Ketema. Totally, they had 15 transfers station and skip point. It also far from the disposing center thinks the cost effective and the efficiency of waste collected and transported timely and protects the environment. The payment system also differs from the far and the nearest because of their own cost to demonstrate and production of waste due to the market area and international sound activities happened. The proposed payment practice will be 1.6 birr by 1 kg or 160 birr by 1m³. The allowed car types was medium size because of collection and transportation of the waste major effect for Time and quality.

3. C-type vehicle: the optimal path is calculated for each C-type cluster attached each other. Based upon the total working hours, the number of vehicles required to clear the C-type stored waste is then calculated. In addition to this the cluster used low cost of transport and the quality of transporting because it near to the disposing or recycling center and including Nefasselek and kolef. Totally, they had 25 transfers station

and skip point. It also closed to the disposing center thinks the cost effective; the efficiency of waste collected, transported timely and protects the environment. The payment system also differs from the far and the medium because of their own cost to demonstrate and production of waste due to the most dense and life area of the society happened. The proposed payment practice will be 1.45 birr by 1 kg or 145 birr by 1m³. The allowed car types was medium or small types size because of collection and transportation of the waste major effect for speed, Time and quality.

3.1.4. Financial expenditure

Being a "public utility" and an essential service, investment in solid waste management does not require a justification in terms of "positive return on investment" or "minimum profits"(5). Such an investment, however, needs to be justified on the basis of being "the least cost technologically feasible option" for achieving the required degree of efficiency and paid to maximize the collection, transportation, timely, clear environmental and other practice clearly applicable.

3.2. Challenges of Transportation

3.2.1. Governmental transportation challenges

3.2.1.1. Efficiency

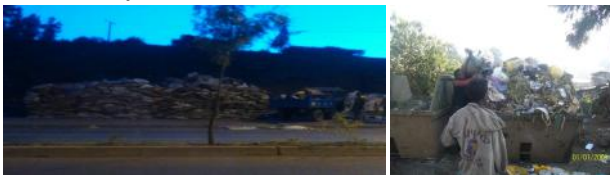


Figure 4:-waste stored and not yet transported timely

From the above figure observed that the waste collected from each household by using cars, pushcarts or other means. Now the waste already collected and stored next step to transport either disposing or recycling centers in this case and other occasion in Addis those happening occurred due to six practice 1.the poor management of activities, 2 the inefficiency of the present drivers, 3.the unmanageable waste storage area, 4.The inefficiency of the car working hours, maintenance and types of car used time, 5.The distribution of car in the subcity because in some subcity the cars idle in some case severe so to amend it due to the waste generation, the distance from disposing and the number of transfer station.6.The participation and awareness of the public still now poor and low practice appreciation. From this observation to increase the efficiency of waste handling, collection, transporting recycling, reusing and disposing waste management system must be planed and road map preparation and change the whole mind set of the society and institutional arrangement of the sectors and used technology depending up of our effort and appreciate the new invented technique practice and applied law and regulation without interruption strongly and seriously.

3.2.1.2. Poor Resource management

1 car:-The maintenance part of the government bought car very in dangers because of weak follow and

control, the brocracy of the procurement system, the budget management and general no attention to give value after buying the cars due to the continuous checked and test the maintenance of those resources

2. Fuel:-In the government car paid more money for subsidiary the Share enterprise to share the subsidies of either of the transportation cost. The consumption of fuel is 3 different situations like higher 20 million years used, minimum 5 million per years. It is the practical management of fuel and maintainace under question in governmental cars so to solve this problem used two chose:-

1. Used the previous system and strongly managed, organized and followed up with effectively and efficiently

2. Privatized the transport system and add some payment to the privatization activities .The researcher observation in that appreciate the privatization management of waste collection and transportation because of strict control, follow up and effective efficiency management applicable if used the first chose the sound clean city vision did not attend the reason behind the poor follow up, control and management system of important the transportation motors of mantainace and fuel availability unsolved so it is important to show the nice city to practice and give responsibility the whole system to privatization or partial method also possible.

3.2.2 Private

3.2.2.1. Distribution of waste



Figure 5:-The private cars types

From the figure observed that the compactors car used those 33 private association to transport waste from 1335 institutions what the problem in heard the amount of waste in the association was very small related to the Share enterprise that is 18% of the city waste transported by those association but in the city has more than 91 governmental and privet institution the agency provided only 1335 institutions due to this the waste amount collected and transported very small is that the payment amount also different company with company .To solve this problem used to way:-

1.To give additional 91 institution distribut for those associations

2.To Change the system of waste collection and transportation system as privatization either method used to increase the waste collection and transportaion efficiency to creat clean enviroment and clean city or world.

3.2.2.2. Car types

The recommended car for private association all have compactors from small to bigger size, but selection the size and types of cars depending of the waste types,

the distance of the transported area and the production time of the car was importance to determine the size and types. Now the privatization appreciation was happened the private association must have enough preparation and capacity to take off the city waste collection and transportation activities properly.

3.3. Finding of the paper

1. To change inefficient waste collection and transportation system by changing altitude, sytem and strict control and follow up activities

2. To integrate the waste system without interruption management and organization that is from handling to recovery (disposing ore recycling activities)

3. To improve the poor resource management in the institution like the car fuel, the maintenance of the car, the payment of workers, the health protective material of workers, the whole procurement system must be changed otherwise to appreciation privatization to give the work from handling to transportation by contractual activities and strict follow up that is share of resource management system

4. To appreciate the recycling activities to minimize the collection, transportation and disposing waste at the source by continuous aware the society during waste collection or other transferring method of knowledge and skill.

4. Conclusions and Recommendation

4.1. Conclusion

Results indicate that the optimal

system is more efficient in terms of collection waste time and distance travelled or waste transportation system. These savings are highly related to waste collection speed, gas emissions, car maintenance cost and fuel consumption. The 3 types of car arrangement based on the optimal activities such as population density, waste generation capacity, road network and the types of road, storage bins and collection vehicles, etc., is developed and used to trace the minimum cost/distance efficient collection paths for transporting the solid wastes to the landfill. The proposed efficient management of the city was daily operations for moving solid wastes, load balancing within vehicles, managing fuel consumption, maintenance and generating work time schedules for the workers and vehicles in either was governmental or privatization. Due to this practice effective transportation was applicable in the city the environment sound situation must be observed unless otherwise the waste management ineffective like the present practice the environment polluted the health of life endanger

for the city, Africa and the world because Addis Ababa the capital city of Ethiopia and Africa and the 3rd tourism center of meeting country. So we are luck to think more approval of waste management special the transportation practice must be improved it is mandatory continues or back.

4.2. Recommendations

1. Future work should focus on reduction the waste at source to cover wider waste collection areas, based on spatial analysis rather than empirical approaches, as well as adaptation of the collection system to the introduction of separate collection schemes for different waste streams and quantification of fuel and emission savings.

2. Appreciate privatation of waste collection and transportation activities both case might be practiced.

5. Acknowledgment

I am acknowledgement for helping and responsiring to work this research the city Administration of Addis Ababa cleansing management office and my Family Merry Gurmu, Euale, Aledana and yafet Massreshaw to practical helping.

Reference

1. Abilities K., Karaiskou K., Togia A. and Lasaridi K. Decision support systems in solid waste management: A case study at the national and local level in Greece. Global NEST Journal, Vol.11, No.2, 2009, pp. 117-126
2. Caputo A.C. and Pelagagge P.M. Integrated geographical information system (GIS) for urban solid waste management. Advances in Architecture Series, 2000, pp. 159-169
3. CPHEEO (Central Public Health and Environmental Engineering Organization), 2000. Manual on Municipal Solid Waste Management
4. Ellis S. and Dinsmore Q. (2005) Turning a corner with mapping software, Public Works, Vol.136, 2005,pp. 56

5. ESRI, 1995. Network Analysis-Modeling Network Systems. Environmental Systems Research Institute Inc., Redlands, CA, USA.
6. Heywood, I., Cornelius, S., Carver, S., 1988. An Introduction to Geographical Information Systems. Addison Wesley Longman, NewYork.
7. Johansson O.M. The effect of dynamic scheduling and routing in a solid waste management system. Waste Management, Vol.26, 2006, pp. 875-885.
8. Kim B.I., Kim S., Sahoo S. Waste collection vehicle routing problem with time windows. Computers and Operations Research, Vol.33, 2006,pp. 3624-3642.
9. Kreith, F., 1994. Handbook of Solid Waste Management. McGraw Hill,New York, USA.
10. Lasaridi K.E., Rovolis A., Abeliotis K. Waste management costs in Greece: spatial patterns and causal factors. In: K. Aravossis, C.A. Brebbia, E. Kakaras and A.G. Kungolos (eds.), Environmental Economics and Investment Assessment, WIT Press,2006, pp. 55-64
11. NEMC (2004) The Environmental Management Act.
12. Oliveira Simonetto E. and Borenstein D. A decision support system for the operational planning of solid waste collection, Waste Management, Vol.27, 2007, 1286-1297
13. Sahoo S., Kim S., Kim B.I., Kraas B., Popov J. Routing optimization for Waste Management Interfaces, Vol.35, 2005, pp. 24-36
14. Sharma, S., 2002. Developing an integrated solid waste management plan for Asansol city, M.Tech. Thesis, Department of Civil Engineering, IIT Kharagpur.
15. Sharma, S.D., 1974. Operations Research. Kedar Nath Ram Nath & Co., Meerut.
16. Shekdar, A.V. Municipal solid waste management - the Indian perspective. Journal of Indian Association for Environmental Management 26 (2), 100-108., 1999
17. Sonesson U. Modelling of waste collection - a general approach to calculate fuel consumption and time. Waste Management and Research, Vol.18, 2000, pp. 115-123
18. Tavares G., Zsigraiova Z., Semiao V., Carvalho M.A case study of fuel saving through optimization of MSW transportation routes, Management of Environmental Quality, Vol.19, No.4, 2008, pp. 444-454.
19. Tchobanoglous G, Hilary T, Samuel AV (1993) Integrated Solid Waste Management: Engineering Principles and Management Issues. New York, McGraw Hill, USA.
20. Tchobanoglous, G., Theisen, H., Vigil, S.A., 1993. Integrated Solid Waste Management: Engineering Principles and Management Issues. McGraw Hill, Singapore.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

TASHKENT EXCHANGE OF CUSTOMER DESIGN AND LANDSCAPE DESIGN

Oybek Sadikjanovich Kasimov

Named after Kamoliddin Behzod
National Institute of Arts and Design
3rd PhD doctoral degree



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-16>

Abstract: Improvement of the living environment, the cardinal change of life conditions of population have been one of the most pressing problems. In article reflected the real-life problems with attention to every small detail. Besides, by author were worked out and projected the solutions to these problems and planned for implementation in life.

Key words: Bozsuv, Chauli, Urda, district, neighborhood, guzar.

Recommended citation: Oybek Sadikjanovich Kasimov. TASHKENT EXCHANGE OF CUSTOMER DESIGN AND LANDSCAPE DESIGN. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 182-187 (2019).

Speaking about housing, we have to focus on improving the living conditions of the population, which is the only and most important aspect. People always live up to their own and live, but they also create the necessary conditions for them. Because nobody comes from the outside and does nothing for us. It is primarily for us and for the future generations, not to do any good or harmful things. Our goal is to make the right use of the human capabilities provided to us, to bring nature to the next generations. This is the ultimate goal of every human being. If our ancestors, nature and our ancestors have made the beauty of nature beautiful, we should be

able to convey that promise to the next generation.

Look at Tashkent's history. Tashkent, the most beautiful city in Central Asia, dates back to several periods:

- 1) The period of the khanates,
- 2) The period of the Tsar Russia,
- 3) The period of the former Soviet Union,
- 4) The period of independence.

The khanate was one-storeyed, and the villagers lived in the courtyard. The courtyards were divided into two parts: the interior and exterior courtyards. Entrance to the exterior of the yard was the entrance door. There was a pool in the middle of the courtyard. The pool is a water reservoir and microclimate.

The outer courtyard is quite decorated and designed to accommodate guests. For this reason, here are planted spices, as well as spruce and willow trees. In the courtyard there were used kale yards and vegetables. There were done with flap of homes. Willow tree is planted and later planted with orchards, mulberry and grapes from fruit trees. People have been pets or engaged in some sort of craft. In the courtyard, more women spent their time. On the street, mostly nuts and cereals are planted.

At the time of Tsar Russia, flowers in roosters of the outer courtyards began to plant rose and purse. Ornamental trees are brought

and scattered. Construction of two-storied high-rise buildings has been started.

During the Soviet era, the species of flowers began to grow. Ornamental trees were planted. In the courtyards figs were planted and planted on the outside of the yard, and the local population was widely used in the construction. Multi-storeyed; four, five, seven, even nine-story buildings.

During the years of independence the construction of public buildings increased. In recent years Tashkent has been undergoing a radical renovation. Different species of trees, shrubs and flowers from abroad are imported and adapted to the local climate.

Periodic change of trees and flowers

№	The name of the term	Type of accommodation	Flower and shrubs	Trees
1	Khanates	Yard	Tulips	Willow, poplar, sycamore
2	Tsar Russia	yard	Nasturtium , rose, purse	Oak, weeping willow
3	Former Soviet Union	Multi-storey building, yard	Rose, jasmine,	Fir tree, chestnut
4	Independence	Multi-storey building, yard	Nargiz flower, gladiolus, hydrangea	Fir tree, kiparis, koster, juniper

The information about the history of the Tashkent House was very low, and most of them burned. In the majority of Uzbek homes, fruit trees were planted until the time of Chor Rossy. Later, ornamental trees were planted.

Officer A.P.Horoshikhin writes: "Tashkent was surrounded by gardens, and the local population was widely used for the construction of trees and houses, and the walls were neighbors, and there were 12

gates in the city. The Kokand enclave, where new houses were built here, with the arrival of the Russian Empire, was the home of the first European architecture house, General MG Chernyaev, built in Tashkent."

"Population growth has reached the present-day Tiflis, Tbilisi," wrote Elize Reklyu. Looking at the city from a distance, it reminded the thick forest because there were not many storey houses.

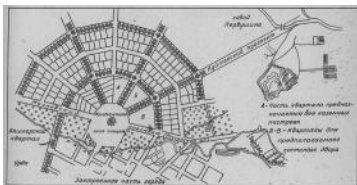
At that time, NN Karazin described, "Tashkent is the only Central Asian developing city where the poplars have a special appearance in the city's appearance."

In 1988, V.A. Looking at Nielsen's book *The Origin of Modern City in Uzbekistan (19th-20th Century)*, we see that large cities in Uzbekistan, including Tashkent, have their own words in a number of spheres such as urbanism, architecture, landscaping, gardening, and so on.

With the arrival of Tsarist Russia, the first construction project in Tashkent was developed by engineer Kolesnikov in 1865, and the general plan of the new Tashkent city (gen.plan) was developed by engineer Makarov in 1870. Accordingly, this project is planned for Boszwoo and Chauili arches.



*The first construction project in Tashkent.
Designed by engineer Kolesnikov in 1865*



*General Plan of Tashkent city (gen.plan).
Designed by engineer Makarov in 1870*

There were eight lakes in the city of Tashkent during that time. They include: Burjar, Boz-Su, Ankhor, Kalkauz, Kukcha, Chigatoy, Kara-Su, Salar, Scream, (Late-and-winter).

Some of them are now closed, while others have a smaller share. Therefore, the water leakage capacity has decreased considerably.

From the History There are many forms of government and society governance. Unique system of management of the Uzbek people is MAXALLA (local committees) system. Makhallya manages himself. Therefore, despite the above-mentioned changes, the concept of mahalla in Uzbek households did not disappear. On the contrary, at any given time, he had a positive outcome. Mahalla's management, Guzar's conception, has been built on centuries-old traditions of humanity based on the spirit of our nation. We need to learn more and implement this system more closely. Studying and using these traditions makes a great contribution to the development of modern architecture and town-planning. It is desirable to preserve the ancient cities, mahallas, guzars and their centers representing the local culture and traditions during the development of the restoration of historic towns.

In Tashkent, most of the makhallya population engaged in agriculture and horticulture. T. Burashev and M. Pospelov wrote that "the export of dried fruit from Tashkent increased by 44% in 1930 and by 85% in 1950." This indicates

that agriculture in Tashkent is very well developed.

The neighborhoods of the city center are very ancient, and new settlements are connected to the outskirts. Lt. Col. V.V. Krestovsky writes that "later the people of Tashkent began to embark on the northeast-eastern part of the city."

Most of the mahallas around the Chorsu Bazaar (Eskijuva) were engaged in crafts and trade. Due to the large number of shops, workshops, the dwellings were smaller than the yards in the outskirts of the city. We have just learned very little about Tashkent. Scientific research will continue.

On April 17, 1932, for the first time in Uzbekistan, the Regulation on local committees was developed. In the years of the Second World War, the makhallya has been exploiting the underground movements. The neighborhood has been solved, a number of issues, such as mobilization, propagandist propaganda, army recruitment, placement of children from the front.

In the work of N.G. Mallitsky's "Tashkent neighborhoods and settlements", there are about 280 mahallas and 170 surroundings in Tashkent in the 19th century.

In recent years, self-governance has been very popular with the traditions and values of our people.

Under the initiative of the First President of the Republic of Uzbekistan I.A Karimov, 2003 was declared the "Year of the Mahalla" in Uzbekistan. In this regard, the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic

of Uzbekistan adopted a number of important tasks aimed at raising the prestige of mahalla in accordance with the February 7, 2003 program "The Year of the Mahalla".

Now the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan Sh.M. Mirziyoyev's press service quoted the President's reference to the most important priorities for 2019 as the year of the beginning of the great work on the prosperity of our villages and neighborhoods, which is the symbol of our Motherland in 2018, "In particular, The "Obod mahalla" programs were welcomed with great pleasure by our people and this year 3 trillion soums were allocated for the construction and improvement works. " . As you can see, "Mahalla" is the heart of the people of Uzbekistan.

So, we have to make sure that the living standards of multi-storey housing are truly managed by the community. If we do not know the neighbor, who is not a neighbor, and who does not know who he works, what problems he or she is experiencing in life, and if we are not indifferent to the upbringing of our children, such a state will collapse. When neighbors get to know each other and help each other to the extent possible, the neighborhood is a real neighborhood. We can achieve progress and prosperity through endless hard work and dedication.

"We need to move from building standard housing in rural areas to step-by-step construction of multi-storey houses in towns and

settlements, and through this new system we will be able to further improve the appearance of our regions and improve the wellbeing of the population". Mirziyoyev designated new plans in his appeal to the Oliy Majlis.

At the same time, the peculiarities of the city development in Tashkent are largely due to the fact that large amounts of housing construction and limited resources in the region depend on their subsequent growth and require a new and more developed form of residential planning and landscape design planning. We need to carry out such research to answer a number of questions, such as improving the living conditions of the population, improving the architectural-artistic appearance of the housing development, intensifying the use of the area, and explaining creative ideas to human and nature.

As it is evident, today, the complex improvement of the living conditions of the population is one of the pressing issues. There are a lot of things to do, especially in multi-storey residential buildings. Formation of living conditions in residential areas and creating a modern landscape design based on aesthetic requirements have been a problem for many years. The demands of people's livelihoods, living conditions, and the environment change.

Thus, the multi-storey building environment and the landscape design in Tashkent depend on a number of specific factors.

1. Geographical location
2. Climate conditions
3. Demographic factors
4. Household and cultural needs of the population
5. Centers of mahallas
6. Psychological factors
7. Ecology
8. Aesthetic requirements
9. Domestic flora and fauna.

The construction of multi-storey buildings in recent years and the efforts made to improve the livelihoods of the population are definitely worth the effort, but it has become clear that there is not a significant link between nature and man. For example, children living in multistoried settlements do not know exactly what kind of tree they are looking for, just because they are ordinary trees and fruit trees. Even the simplest details; do not know how to use ax, shovels. Pets can not be separated from each other. Of course, the rapid development of technology is appealing to everyone, but we are far away from physical activity. As a result, there is a physical, mental, psychological vulnerability among young people. Our aim is to bring our homes to the paradise, to create the minds of people with the emphasis on landscape design.

Literature

1. Press Service of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan addressed to the Oliy Majlis of the Republic of Uzbekistan on the most important priorities for 2019
2. V.A. Nielsen "Origin of modern city in Uzbekistan" (beginning of the XIX-XX centuries) 1988y.
3. Guidelines for a comprehensive set up of the towns of Uzbekistan. Tashkent, 1970
4. Q.X. Muxamedjanov Formation of the architectural and planning structure of residential areas and neighborhoods(for example, large and large cities of Uzbekistan)
5. Pulatov X.Sh. Architectural and planning structure of old Tashkent (the end of the nineteenth and the beginning of the twentieth century's. Tashkent 1994)
6. O.S.Kasimov Garden Legacy of East and West 2017y. LAP Lambert Academic Publishing.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**THE ROLE OF BIOCHIPS IN MEDICAL
INSTRUMENTATION: TERMINOLOGY AND
COMPONENTS**

Eng. Fadi T. Alasasfeh

Royal Medical Services, Amman - Jordan



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-17>

Abstract: A biochip is defined as a combination of microarrays coordinated on a robust substance or layer which allows a lot of tests to be utilized simultaneously in order to obtain more throughput as well as speed. A biochip can execute thousands of biological processes in a very short time. Different kinds of biochips become one of the most significant technologies in several biomedical areas [1, 2].

Keywords: Biochip, Transponder, Microchip, Microarray and Reader.

Recommended citation: Eng. Fadi T. Alasasfeh. THE ROLE OF BIOCHIPS IN MEDICAL INSTRUMENTATION: TERMINOLOGY AND COMPONENTS. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 188-191 (2019).

1. Components of Biochips

The evolution of this technology began with preliminary labor on the implied sensor technology. In 1922, Hughes innovated the glass pH sensor. After a while, the K+ electrode was invented by integrating valinomycin into a tender film. Two well-known scientists in this field, Watson and Crick, produced the famous double spiral framework of DNA molecules and this invention was the ignition spark for genetic research which keeps going to improve until these days [3].

In fact, the biochip system is considered a radio frequency identification system. This system performs low-frequency waves to

connect the biochip to the reader. This low amount of frequency waves ensures the safety of its usage. The distance between the biochip and the reader ranges between 5 and 30 centimeters. The biochip implants appliance involves two important contents which are:

- a) The transponder.
- b) The reader or the scanner [4].

The first component (i.e. the transponder) is the de facto biochip implant. The transponder is categorized into two forms. The passive transponder which is characterized by not having a battery. This kind of transponders is capable of working for at least 99 years. It also does not require any

maintenance. It works only when it receives a small-power electrical charge from the reader. Then, communication will happen between the reader and the biochip. The second form of transponders is the active transponder. Here, the transponder employs its own energy source which is often a small battery. The transponder is made of four components which are computer microchip, antenna coil, capacitor and the glass capsule. Figure (1) below illustrates the components of the biochip, the size of biochip and the perspective of the actual size. The size of the biochip is about 11.5 millimeters from end to end. This small size is the same as the size of an uncooked grain of rice. The size is suitable for biomedical applications and to ensure safety to the human body[5].

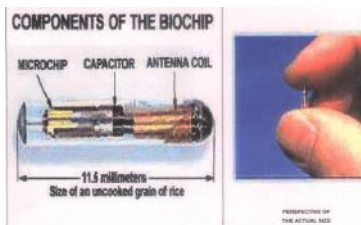


Figure (1): Components of the Biochip

Having considered the components of abiochip in general, it is also reasonable to look at these components delicately. The first component which is the microchip can store a singular identification number with a length of 10 to 15 digits. The American Veterinary Identification Devices which is

abbreviated as AVID asserts that its microchips have the ability of more than 70k million unique numbers[6]. The identification number is being engraved using a laser at the exterior surface of the microchip. Then, it will be very difficult to change. This component involves also the circuits needed to forward the identification figure to the reader. The second component is the antenna coil. It is usually a plain, coil of copper filament round an iron rod. The teeny antenna can receive and send waves from the reader.

The third component is the tuning capacitor. As its name implies, this component can store <0.001 watts which sent from the reader that fires the transponder. The process enables the transponder to return the identification number echoed in the microchip. The tuning capacitor uses the same frequency as the scanner. All the three components are housed inside a glass capsule. Indeed, it is a very small house in size. It is manufactured mainly from biocompatible materials. After composition, the glass capsule is hermetically closed. Then, the electronic components become very safe inside the human body. To ensure that the biochip is in a persistent position inside the body, a polypropylene polymer envelope is connected to an end of the glass capsule. The biochip is injected to the body using a hypodermic syringe. The injection process does not require any anesthesia and is an easy, unharmed and plain process[7].

It is important however to overemphasize the importance of the reader. It is composed of a coil that produces an electromagnetic field which using radio waves that can supply the needed power to fire the biochip. Furthermore, it holds a receiving coil which draws the transferred code. The activation and receiving processes happen in a very short time which may reach milliseconds. This component has the software and electronic chips needed to decode the received code and show the outcome in a display. Moreover, it can be connected to a computer.

2. Microarray Technologies

This technology is not restricted to DNA analyses which was the first form of microarrays. There are different types of these microarrays such as protein ones, antibodies ones and chemical ones. These types of microarrays can be used to produce biochips. In protein microarrays, the biochip supersedes the ELISA layer as the reaction platform. This system analyzes the relevant tests at the same time on the same sample and then creates a patient profile. Consequently, this profile can be utilized to implement a full image of the patient and his/her diagnoses and prognosis[8].

Moreover, executing many tests at the same time permits to reduce the time required to diagnose and treat the patient as well as reducing the number of tests needed. In fact, Biochip Microarrays Technology is considered a significant methodology inherited from a well-known system.

This technology utilizes antibody-capture immunoassays. These novel immunoassays are characterized in its framework where the capture ligands are denoting chemical bonds formed by the sharing of electrons between atoms connected to the top layer of the biochip in a consistent array. Biochip Array Technology which implemented in sandwich platforms uses an enzyme-labeled antibody. The antibody-antigen binding executes a chemical reaction that generates light. A high-resolution camera is used to detect the light[9].

Another form of microarrays is tissue microarrays. These microarrays are composed of paraffin blocks where about one thousand distinct tissue cores are gathered in an array platform in order to permit multiplex histological analyses. When this technique is applied, a special hollow needle is utilized to extract tissue nuclei which are only 0.6 millimeters in diameter. The extraction is performed in tissues embedded with paraffin like clinical biopsies or tumor samples.

The tissue microarrays have been used widely to analyze and estimate cancer biomarkers in addition to immunohistochemistry technology. This association between the two forms of microarrays succeeded in defining cancer biomarkers in different defined cohorts.

3. Conclusion

The biochip technology has achieved successive successes in many medical fields and the biomedical engineers have been updating this technology and taking

advantages of the digital revolution to develop and improve this technology. These systems are safe for patients and do not take long to analyze the information taken from the patient and do not need to be maintained periodically.

References

1. Xiong, Q., et al., Magnetic nanochain integrated microfluidic biochips. *Nature communications*, 2018. 9(1): p. 1743.
2. Ali, S.S., et al., Supply-chain security of digital microfluidic biochips. *Computer*, 2016. 49(8): p. 36-43.
3. Pardatscher, G., et al., Gene Expression on DNA Biochips Patterned with Strand-Displacement Lithography. *Angewandte Chemie International Edition*, 2018. 57(17): p. 4783-4786.
4. Li, Z., et al. High-level synthesis for micro-electrode-dot-array digital microfluidic biochips. in *2016 53rd ACM/EDAC/IEEE Design Automation Conference (DAC)*. 2016. IEEE.
5. Lin, P.C., D. Weinrich, and H. Waldmann, Protein biochips: oriented surface immobilization of proteins. *Macromolecular Chemistry and Physics*, 2010. 211(2): p. 136-144.
6. Chakrabarty, K., Design automation and test solutions for digital microfluidic biochips. *IEEE Transactions on Circuits and Systems I: Regular Papers*, 2010. 57(1): p. 4-17.
7. Grissom, D. and P. Brisk. Path scheduling on digital microfluidic biochips. in *DAC Design Automation Conference 2012*. 2012. IEEE.
8. Schena, M., *Microarray analysis*. 2003: Wiley-Liss New York.
9. Kricka, L.J., *Microchips, microarrays, biochips and nanochips: personal laboratories for the 21st century*. *Clinica Chimica Acta*, 2001. 307(1-2): p. 219-223.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**THE MECHANISM OF REGULATION OF INNOVATIVE
FORMS OF SOCIAL AND LABOR RELATIONS IN THE
INNOVATION ECONOMY**

Ulugmuradova Nodira Berdimurodovna,
Samarkand State University, Economy and Business
Faculty researcherat



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-18>

Abstract: This article discusses the need for the formulation of innovative forms of social and economic relations, tables and tasks, degrees, synergy and institutional rights and trends.

Keywords: social and labor relations, regulation, innovation, government regulation, collective bargaining, innovative forms of social and labor relations, enforcement, institution.

Recommended citation: Ulugmuradova Nodira Berdimurodovna. THE MECHANISM OF REGULATION OF INNOVATIVE FORMS OF SOCIAL AND LABOR RELATIONS IN THE INNOVATION ECONOMY. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 192-201 (2019).

In the modern economy, the regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations can develop in several areas: market self-regulation, government regulation and collective bargaining regulation.

Understanding the limits of state regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations implies a recourse to the category of "self-regulation". In our study, self-regulation is understood as an independent and initiative activity of workers and employers (subjects of innovative forms of social and labor relations), as well as non-state economic institutions to establish rules of conduct and monitor their

observance. Government regulation due to the need to ensure the solution of the following issues:

- firstly, to ensure the public interest ("the theory of public choice");

- secondly, to maintain certain sectors of the economy and stabilize competition between pressure groups (Chicago regulation theory);

- thirdly, to increase the degree of efficiency of resource allocation in the sphere of production and consumption and streamline the process of obtaining by the public authorities a political rent-income dividend.

Thus, government regulation ensures the interests of employees

and employers of distance and agent labor relations, support for new sectors of the economy, increasing the efficiency of the distribution of labor resources between business areas, organizations. Outside government regulation may be self-regulation.

In Uzbekistan, the problem of regulating social and labor relations, and in particular, the regulation of innovative forms was addressed quite recently and already when a growing imbalance in the interests of workers and employers, the state, threatening the further socio-economic development of the country, became apparent. As we have already noted, the modern field of innovative forms of social and labor relations is quite mosaic.

The specificity of the "format" of new social and labor relations, as well as the general socio-economic conditions for their development in the country, will also determine the specifics of legal, economic, and organizational measures to regulate them.

Under regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations we understand the impact of the subject of regulation on constituent objects of social and labor relations (guarantees and terms of employment, labor organization, remuneration) in order to ensure their orderliness, balance the interests of business and employees and improve the quality of working life, maximize positive effects. The sustainability and effectiveness of state regulation of innovative forms

of social and labor relations in the economy will depend on finding new norms, forms, mechanisms, and methods of interaction between various subjects about the special equipment. The result of regulation can be both a change in the scale, structure, dynamics, and qualitative characteristics of innovative forms of social and labor relations (balance of "security-efficiency", "flexibility and security").

Among researchers, a holistic understanding of the concept of regulating non-standard, innovative forms of social and labor relations has not yet emerged [2, 3, 5].

One of the conditions for ensuring the balance of new forms of labor relations in the aspect of "flexibility-security" is the strengthening of their state regulation by legal and economic methods. The state regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations is, on the one hand, the result of multiple interactions between the subject and the objects of regulation, on the other hand, constant process of exposure and correction of behavior of the subjects of these relations.

Solving the problems of regulating these forms of labor relations implies the development of new principles and regulatory measures, including on the basis of the assimilation and practical application of existing foreign experience. However, the problems of importing institutions and possible institutional traps should be taken into account. In this case, the priority in choosing forms

and methods of regulation should be to ensure a balance of decent work conditions for employees and the interests of modern business and society.

The analysis shows that with the advent of innovative forms of social and labor relations essential the importance of the flexibility factor. So, shifting emphasis from employment protection to ensuring the efficiency of the labor market has led to a reassessment of the components of state regulation of labor relations, including legislation on employment protection, the unemployment insurance system, regulation of private employment agencies, active employment programs, etc. Secondly, the situation of workers and the degree of their social protection often deteriorates compared to employees of "traditional" labor relations. Thirdly, the very model of "traditional" labor relations [4] is put into question, especially when applying the lean labor format. It should be noted that developed countries (USA, Australia, Germany, Austria, the Netherlands, etc.), despite the initial rejection of new flexible forms of labor relations by trade unions, still take into account the increasing role of flexibility of social and labor relations in the conditions of innovative development of the economy. Recognition of the importance of regulating innovative forms of labor relations abroad is reflected in the creation of mechanisms and institutions for

regulating both contingent labor and distance employment; in the development of the regulatory framework; in the allocation of funds for the creation of research centers and organizations involved in monitoring and studying the problems associated with new forms of employment, etc.

The principles of a decent work program depend on the economic policies of the states, first of all, the degree to which they want to work and to seek employment. This is not about the case, but about the work of the International Labor Organization in the Global Employment Program. According to the International Labor Organization (ILO), the number of employees covered by unprotected forms of employment in the world is \$ 1.53 billion. one person. This is more than half (50.1%) of the total number of employed people. For this reason, experts from the International Labor Organization recommended evaluating the decent workforce in 11 countries for decent work [1].

The main tasks in regulating innovative forms of social and labor relations are: giving the necessary vector of development of innovative forms of social and labor relations by creating an effective mechanism for their regulation, choosing the basic principles of regulation and forming a scientifically and economically sound program (recommendations) for their development in our country, taking into account the experience of

foreign countries in the regulatory process.

Innovative entrepreneurship is a modern form of labor relations and can be implemented both as a joint-stock company and a small enterprise as an individual entrepreneur. Particularly, there are advantages and disadvantages of innovative entrepreneurship as small infrastructure - small innovation enterprise [1].

The mechanism of regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations is considered by us from the standpoint of an open system and includes the purpose and objectives of regulation; levels, subjects, principles and subjects of regulation; The new composition of institutional and organizational, socio-economic, information and analytical blocks, new regulatory tools. It should allow to maximize the positive effects of the development of new forms of social and labor relations and reduce the risks of their subjects.

For the mechanism of regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations, the main subjects will be employers, hired employees and the state, which in the process of interaction have the ability to make conscious decisions regarding preparation of personnel, recruitment, employment, work organization, labor incentives, etc. By essence, the mechanism of regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations includes the whole range of socio-economic relations between these subjects, as well as legal,

organizational and psychological techniques and methods that ensure their functioning in the system of social and labor relations. It should be noted that the key value of the regulatory process in innovative forms of social and labor relations is precisely its multisubjectness. It is clear that it is impossible to effectively influence their development in the case of the implementation of regulation by only one entity (by the state), while not using the potential of other participants in the regulatory process. The effectiveness of regulation of distance and agent forms of labor relations will depend on the coherence of actions of all subjects of this process. However, in our opinion, in a given period of time in the emerging political, economic and socio-cultural conditions, the priority role in regulation (from among various subjects) should be with the state, which defines strategic goals, develops laws, programs, projects related to structuring innovative forms of social and labor relations. At the same time, the possibilities of their self-regulation are somewhat limited.

Improving the mechanism for regulating new forms of social and labor relations of the labor force should involve the definition of levels of regulation.

1. Global (international) level. At this level, the subject regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations is favored first of all by the International Labor Organization, governments, international

organizations, etc. Conventions and Recommendations MOT are adopted, setting guidelines for regulating new forms of labor relations as a whole, as well as from blocks at the national level.

2. National level. The entities that regulate at this level will be departments and ministries, regional authorities, representative offices of employees and employers, etc. The importance of this level is due to the fact that the level of clarity and literacy and clarity of the policy of regulating new forms social and labor relations will depend on the efficiency and quality of their duties at lower levels of regulation.

3. Regional level of regulation of service stations. The subjects of regulation of social and labor relations at the regional level are local authorities, as well as branches, branches of large companies, and territorial unions of trade unions. In the conditions of the rapid spread of distance and agent social and labor relations and given the high regional differentiation of their distribution, special requirements should be placed on the regional level of management. It is at this level that the "new" labor relations will be "actually" regulated, labor disputes will be settled, the policy of creating an effective labor market, the implementation of decent work programs will be pursued.

4. The micro level of regulation is one of the most important, because it is at this level that employers choose which profile of new forms

of social and labor relations will correspond to the stage of developing their business and maintaining high competitiveness. Employees at this level carry out their work activities, choose the type of employment, the organization of labor and the workplace, the wage model. Ensuring the safety of workers, the promotion of labor, the possibility of participation in social dialogue, the availability of benefits and guarantees from the organization, the term of the employment contract, etc. are of great importance. The quality of the working life of an employee and the effectiveness of the organization's work depend on how clearly and correctly social and labor relations are built at the local level.

In the structure of the regulatory mechanism should be highlighted Institutional, organizational, socio-economic and informational and analytical components, the interrelation of which, together with their interaction, determines specific measures to regulate innovative forms of social and labor relations:

1. Institutional and organizational component - there is a combination of bodies and institutions, enterprises and institutions of various subjects (both state and non-state) involved in the regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations, as well as the mechanism of their interaction in the process of organizing and regulating innovative forms of social - labor relations. The functions of this component of the regulation of new

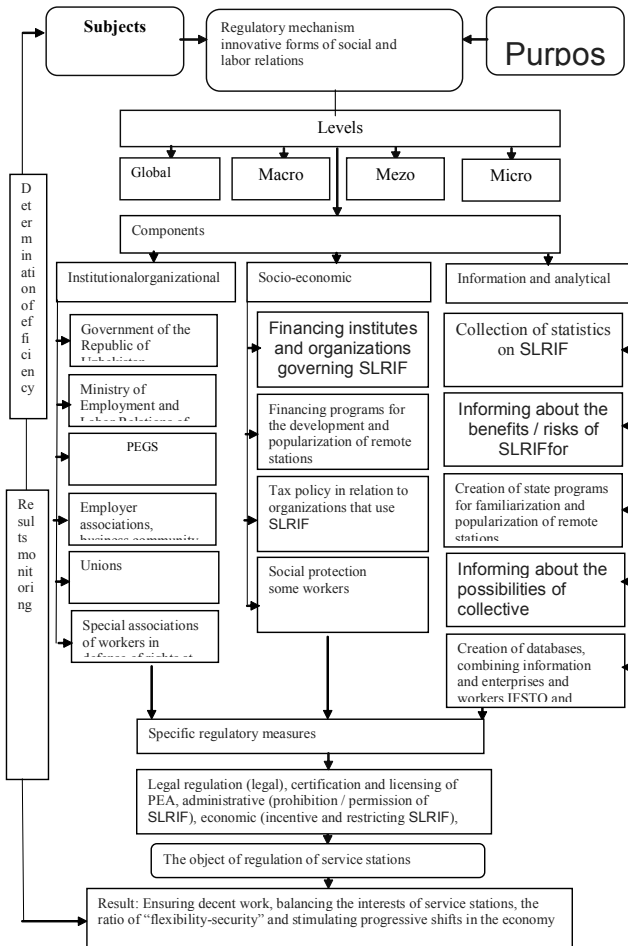
forms of social and labor relations are the adoption of relevant legislation, legally formulating, permitting (prohibiting), stimulating (restraining) certain new forms of labor relations and creating relevant institutions that monitor and control social and labor spheres. This component of the mechanism requires careful study of foreign experience, since Uzbekistan does not yet have special legal acts regulating "non-standard" forms of labor relations.

2. The socio-economic component involves the development of specific measures of social and economic support (restriction) and support of the regulatory processes of innovative forms of social and labor relations (financing of institutions and organizations involved in the regulatory process, research of new forms of social and labor relations; programs of special taxation of employers using new forms, protection and support of employees, their status and rights, determination of insurance contributions, etc.). This component of the mechanism is still poorly developed. The socio-economic component occupies an important place in the mechanism of regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations, along with its other elements. Its basis is a set of social

and economic measures, within which there is both stimulation of the development of innovative forms of social and labor relations, and the containment of certain negative effects of their use. In terms of improving this component, attention should be paid to the following aspects:

- implementation of the policy of protection of various categories of workers included in social and labor relations of an innovative nature;
- taking into account in the development of tax policy issues of support for employers who apply modern forms of technical service;
- determination of the size of the authorized capital of a private employment agency (PRA);
- development of a system of fines for employers who violate the regulatory parameters of the conditions and labor protection of subjects of innovative forms of technical service stations;
- Consideration in the corporate social policy of the interests of employees, teleworkers, etc.

3. Information and analytical component of the mechanism for regulating the new forms of technical service stations. In the context of rapid changes in the modern social and labor sphere, special attention should be paid to: the collection of statistical data on innovative forms of social and labor Figure. 1.



The components of the mechanism of regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations

The relationship and interaction of the regulatory mechanism components described above determines specific measures to regulate innovative forms of social and labor relations. Direct measures include measures that directly affect the possibility of developing new forms of technical service stations, the dynamics of growth or reduction in the number of employees, and the direction of regulation. This category should

include, for example, legislative measures (certification and licensing of PEA); administrative concerning the permission / prohibition of specific forms of technical service stations in Uzbekistan (legalization (prohibition) of the tripartite model of labor relations and activities of private employment agencies, legalization of remote social and labor relations, including e-balance), etc.

We take indirect measures as measures that do not have a direct impact on the development of new forms of social and labor relations, but they form certain prerequisites and possibilities for their future distribution. These include economic (stimulating and limiting the innovative forum of social and labor relations (SLRIF)); psychological and informational (government programs for the promotion of distance employment among the population and employers, etc.) measures. These measures, affecting various socio-economic aspects of the life of citizens, affect the process of regulating social and labor relations.

It is important that it is necessary to analyze not only the quantitative side of the components included in the mechanism, but also the qualitative filling of the mechanism, i.e. the degree of involvement in solving the problem of regulating innovative forms of social and labor relations and the degree of effective combination of several activities.

All the above allows us to present the components of the mechanism

for regulating innovative forms of special relativity (Figure. 1). The most important role in the regulation of innovative forms of technical service stations in the republic should be played by the State Employment Service at the regional level. However, it is worth noting that, within the framework of this institution, attention has not yet been paid to remote work, E-lance, etc. These forms of social and labor relations "fall out" from the field of view of the most important formal institutions for regulating labor relations. There are no contacts between the State Service of Emergency Situations and the PEA in terms of the directions for the exchange of information base and cooperation.

Organizations representing the protection of the interests of workers in the implementation of their work activities in the format of new forms of technical service stations should be actively involved in the work on regulating these forms. The FNPR and other trade union organizations should develop an effective system of interaction with each other in order to develop a unified program for the protection of rights and guarantees of workers in non-standard forms of employment in order to prevent a decrease in the level of protection of Russian workers.

Measures to improve the institutional and organizational component of the mechanism for regulating innovative forms of social and labor relations, in our opinion, should be as follows:

1. Inclusion of the main institutions (ministries, departments, organization services, trade unions, employers' unions) in the regulation of innovative forms of technical service stations. At the same time, it is necessary to ensure the coherence and efficiency of interactions between the institutions for regulating innovative forms of social and labor relations, the responsibility of the employer in the framework of new forms of labor relations, their control, etc.

2. Creation of organizations representing the interests of workers and employers within certain types of innovative forms of technical service stations (teleworking agencies, E-lancers, borrowers' organizations, etc.).

3. Expansion of the functions of the State Service of Emergency in the regulation of new forms of technical service stations (involvement of the public employment service in disseminating information about employment opportunities within the distant form of technical service stations to the public, collecting data, conducting research, calculating development forecasts for this segment of the labor market, coverage of competitive activities achieving decent work conditions, etc.).

4. Improving the coherence and efficiency of interaction of actions between all administrative and other bodies involved in the regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations.

5. Modernization and improvement of the system of information interaction between the institutions participating in the regulation of social and labor relations, the

development of a single mechanism of interaction in the exchange of information, decision making.

Improving the efficiency of the enforcement and operation of institutions for regulating innovative forms of social and labor relations. The informational and analytical component of the organizational and economic mechanism in the field of regulating innovative forms of social and labor relations is an important element of it, since its main task should be quality and constant monitoring of the labor market, creating current and future picture of the development of the proliferation and development of new orientation, and in the future, and accompany the processes of regulation of new forms of technical service stations.

The information and analytical component of the mechanism for regulating innovative forms of social and labor relations in the republic is not worked out at all. Therefore, in this case, it is worth paying attention to the following:

1. Establishment of research centers involved in monitoring distance employment, extra work in the republic.

2. Implementation of programs to familiarize with the possibilities of participation in innovative forms of social and labor relations in the country.

3. Creation of programs (surveys) and implementation of feedback with employees interested in solving various social and labor problems in the field of new forms of technical service stations.

One of the most important tasks for creating a high-quality system of

state monitoring and control of the regulation of innovative forms of social and labor relations is, first of all, the problem of forming a list of key indicators that should be constantly monitored by national and regional authorities. Such a list should fully cover various aspects of the application of innovative forms of social and labor relations (in terms of labor organization, ensuring its safety, employment, wages, labor protection, access to collective bargaining, terms of temporary contracts, etc.)), which in turn will help to identify problem areas and predict possible risks in the future. The improvement of the statistical base in this area should make it possible to calculate the following indicators: the share of employed labor to the equivalent of full employment, the number of persons performing work at home in general, and teleworkers, in particular; the average monthly accrued wages of these categories of workers in the whole country and in the regions; educational and vocational qualification structure of participants in innovative forms of social and labor relations; a

comparative rating of regions and industries in which new forms of social and labor relations are used, etc. It is possible to calculate the integral indicator of decent work for subjects of new forms of technical service stations.

The set of measures to regulate SLRIF, in our opinion, should include:

1. Legislative regulation of innovative forms of technical service stations - i.e.the decision on the recognition of the legality of the new forms of serviceuse of borrowed labor and the development of a program for their effective

regulation.

2. Permission / prohibition of new forms of service stations, depending ontheir influence on the state of the social and labor sphere, the labor market,the degree of protection of the rights of workers.

3. Stimulation and development of new forms of special relativity, positively affectingon the development of the economy as a whole, business, increasing its flexibility andcompetitiveness.

4. Stimulation of formation of conditions for creation in the republicdecent work for workers.

Bibliography

1. AbdurahmonovQ.H. Labor economy: theory and practice. - T.: "FAN", 2019. 452-p
2. Andrukovich, L.N. Agency employment as an objective reality of the Russian labor market // Social and Labor Studies. Release XXII. // Ed. Col.: Andrukovich L.N., Vedeneva B.T. - M.: IMEMO RAN, 2009.-p.17;
3. Warsaw, EL. Employment flexibility: international experience and Russian practice. / EL. Warsaw. - Kemerovo State University. Kemerovo, 2009.- p.45.
4. Krivoy, I V. Legal regulation of loan labor: international legal, comparative and national aspects. Diss. Cand. legal Sciences / Ya.V. Curve.- Moscow, 2006.p. eight.
5. Nurtidinova A. Loan Labor: Features of the Organization and Possibilities of Legal Regulation // Economy and Law. 2004, No. 9, p.23.

LIFE SCIENCE

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

PICKY EATER CHILDS, TERMINOLOGY AND HANDLING CASES

**Zakaria Sharadgah MD, Mayada Migdadi MD, Mustafa Al-Haji MD,
Hala Sweidan MD, Sondos Alharahsheh MD**
Royal Medical Services, Amman - Jordan



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-19>

Abstract: Parents suffer from children who are considered picky eaters. Feeding difficulties are problems experienced by communities in general and households in particular. Moreover, evaluations of picky eating are reasonably extraordinary between young children. Despite, definitions and measures vary, evaluations of picky eating are little great in the preschool age group [1].

Keywords: Picky eaters, nutrition, fussy eating and growth.

Recommended citation: Zakaria Sharadgah MD, Mayada Migdadi MD, Mustafa Al-Haji MD, Hala Sweidan MD, Sondos Alharahsheh MD. PICKY EATER CHILDS, TERMINOLOGY AND HANDLING CASES. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 202-206 (2019).

1. Background

Cambridge Dictionary defines the term "picky eater" as the terminology of "someone who is very careful about choosing only what he/she like"[2]. In fact, kids are considered such picky eaters. Carruth BR, et al reported that this aspect won the attention of parents to their children aged between one and ten years old to be as high as 50% [3]. Statistics about this problem are scary. Anthony et al illustrated that children reported being picky eaters at any given age with a percentage that range between 13% and 22%. Recently, the incidence of this problem has decreased over time, but on the other hand, the rate of

outbreaks has increased. Thus, picky eating is always a chronic problem with 40% having a duration of more than two years [4].

The problem is concentrated on growth. Parents often concern when their kids' weight and height are not maintaining with their age. The dependency of parents about their picky kids is legitimate. This is because kids can suffer from serious health troubles such as episodes of infections and inconvenient food intake. These healthy issues with food are well-documented reasons for interrupted growth. Hence, nutritious insufficiencies may cause inappropriate growth. The immune system may be suffered because of

loss of food leading to swelling opportunities for illness and infection. Other problems might occur which are impaired cognitive and emotional development. These problems might lead to improper growth. Moreover, according to healthcare principles, there are some common manners of picky eaters such as the following:

- 1- Eating small amounts of food.
- 2- Taking only specific kinds of foods.
- 3- Eating very little fruits and vegetables.
- 4- Denying to attempt new forms of foods.
- 5- Demanding food made in particular ways.
- 6- Presenting potent likes and dislikes for food.
- 7- Expressed tantrums when denied foods[5].

Considering the factors that have an effect on growth is based on the golden rule that determines the first five years of a person's growth will determine 60% of final adult height.

2. Literature Review

This section presents a general literature review and previous researchers related to the objectives of this study. Many studies were concerned about picky eating. But, there is no standard framework to follow during the execution of studies. The studies vary in some aspects such as the ages of children under study and the period of picky eating needed for a case. Dubois et al reported that the attribution of children for every behavior class keep completely stable during the

interval of study. The age of children conducted in the study was 4.5 years old. The study illustrated that picky eaters were twice as likely to be underweight at 4.5 years as children who were never picky eaters. Adjusted odds ratios exposed overeaters were six times more likely to be overweight at 4.5 years than were children who were never overeaters [6]. Another study was established by Jacobi et al to validate the notion of parent-reported picky eating utilizing objective and laboratory-based measures. In this study, 135 infants were observed from birth to 5.5 years. Developmental measures of picky eating were gathered from patterned feedings at ages of 3.5 and 5.5 years in the laboratory as well as at home. The results were evaluated based on Stanford Feeding Questionnaire and Children's Behavior Questionnaire. The results obtained were significant such as picky eaters ate less food and refuse having vegetables. Besides, picky girls decreased their caloric intake during ages 3.5 and 5.5, unlike all other children where they increased their caloric intake. At the end, picky children presented more parent-reported negative affect than non-picky children [7].

A recent study held by Cardona et al in 2015 suggested that picky eating is often a transient attitude and considered part of plain development in preschool children. The study group was involving about 4,018 participants of a population-based cohort. Records from pregnancy onwards were concluded.

Picky eating was evaluated by maternal report at three ages for children which were 1.5, 3 and 6 years old. The relations of child and family characteristics with

trajectories of picky eating were tested utilizing logistic regression. Never picky eaters were utilized as the reference group. Table (1) shows the prevalence of picky eating.

Category	Age	Prevalence
1	1.5	26.5%
2	3	27.6%
3	6	13.2%

Table (1): Prevalence of Picky Eating

The study outlined four primary picky eating trajectories which were:

1- Never picky eating at whole estimations. In fact, this category represents the higher percentage which was 55% of children.

2- Remitting: this category contains the children until 4 years old. Indeed, the percentage was 32% of children.

3- Late-onset: this category contains children of age 6 years old only. The percentage of this group was 4%.

4- Persistent: this category contains children of all ages. The percentage was 4%.

This concludes that the category of never picky eating at whole estimations is the one with the highest percentage. Besides, the second category was remitting with an intermediate percentage. The third and fourth categories obtained equal percentages [8].

In 2017, a study made by Walton et al to argue for a reconceptualization of picky eating whereby child agency is deemed according to eating preferences rather than grouped as compliant or non-compliant behavior. Moreover, the study aimed to defend the

utilization of bi-directional relational approaches of causality and convenient framework for realization the parent-child feeding relevance. The study revised the present feeding literature and analyzed the core of child socialization literature. The authors conclude that a reconceptualization of picky eating might illustrate the impact that parental feeding behaviors and child eating attitudes have on each other. Hence, this might permit specialist in healthcare to advocate in improving healthy eating behaviors between children. This will result to minimize tension during mealtimes as well as interests of picky eating [1].

3. Discussion (Dealing with Picky Eaters)

Children of an age less than ten years old have a feeling of fussy eating. The responsibility is based on parents who have to be good role models of healthy eating. Parents should inspire eating environments characterized by inviting and with no tension. Researchers in healthcare studies advice that food have to never be made to reward, compel, or be a portion of a power fight among children and their parents.

Specialists advise parents to obviate confusions during mealtimes such as watching televisions and playing with toys. Parents should present a neutral behavior and praise the child for self-feeding skills. Some behaviors might lead the child to unwanted results such as dealing with food as a prize, for comfort, or as an expression of parents' emotion to children. These behaviors will increase the preference for specific kinds of foods just. Further, specialists tend to advise parents to make a schedule for meals as well as for snacks. Not only this, they do not hesitate to ask parents to learn their children to identify and distinguish hunger and eat accordingly. One of the important advises in this issue is restricting the duration of meals. Parents have to finish meals after twenty or thirty minutes, even if the child has eaten so little or nothing of the meal presented. Parents should present foods that are suitable for their children's ages. Meanwhile, avoiding presenting many types of food at the same time. Then, improve the attitude in children to ask for extra helpings. Moreover, there are some bad behaviors practiced by children during eating their meals such as playing with served food as well as opening a lot of topics to talk about instead of eating. Specialists call on

parents to promote independent feeding values for their children. This behavior will learn the child to ask for food and be independent [1, 3, 9, 10].

Saw Bee Suan, a dietetics assistant manager in Sunway Medical Center illustrated that picky eaters do not grow as per the growth chart. One of the things that she would ask the parents to do is giving their kids a complete and balanced nutritious milk. This is due to the fact that during the period of building up their food tolerance, children can consume nutritious milk to help them grow better. Saw illustrated that there is no single food that can give all the nutrients that the children need for development. The need for carbohydrate is for energy. Proteins for the building blocks of the body. Hence, balanced nutrition is important to support growth optimally. The advice is to make the food interesting in different shapes and different colors [11].

4. Conclusion

It ought to be observed that there has been some key, pioneering, steps toward a bidirectional perspective on parent-child feeding interactions including providing children with choice, discussing rules and boundaries surrounding food and emotional support during feeding interactions.

References

1. Walton, K., et al., Time to re-think picky eating?: a relational approach to understanding picky eating. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 2017. 14(1): p. 62.
2. University, C., in *Cambridge Dictionary*. 2018.
3. Malaysia, A.N., *PediaSur*. Abbott, 2018.
4. Mascola, A.J., S.W. Bryson, and W.S. Agras, Picky eating during childhood: a longitudinal study to age 11 years. *Eating behaviors*, 2010. 11(4): p. 253-257.
5. Steinsbekk, S., et al., Child and parent predictors of picky eating from preschool to school age. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 2017. 14(1): p. 87.
6. Dubois, L., et al., Problem eating behaviors related to social factors and body weight in preschool children: A longitudinal study. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 2007. 4(1): p. 9.
7. Jacobi, C., et al., Behavioral validation, precursors, and concomitants of picky eating in childhood. *Journal of the American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry*, 2003. 42(1): p. 76-84.
8. Cardona Cano, S., et al., Trajectories of picky eating during childhood: a general population study. *International journal of eating disorders*, 2015. 48(6): p. 570-579.
9. Nederkoorn, C., K. Houben, and R.C. Havermans, Taste the texture. The relation between subjective tactile sensitivity, mouthfeel and picky eating in young adults. *Appetite*, 2019.
10. Lumeng, J.C., et al., Picky eating, pressuring feeding, and growth in toddlers. *Appetite*, 2018. 123: p. 299-305.
11. *PediaSure, Handling Picky Eater Child*. 2018.

LIFE SCIENCE

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**THE ROLE OF SPIROMETER IN EARLY DIAGNOSIS
OF COPD**

Eng. Aktham Ali Al-Omar
Royal Medical Services, Amman - Jordan



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-20>

Abstract: Parents suffer from children who are considered picky eaters. Feeding difficulties are problems experienced by communities in general and households in particular. Moreover, evaluations of picky eating are reasonably extraordinary between young children. Despite, definitions and measures vary, evaluations of picky eating are little great in the preschool age group [1].

Keywords: Picky eaters, nutrition, fussy eating and growth.

Recommended citation: Aktham Ali Al-Omar. THE ROLE OF SPIROMETER IN EARLY DIAGNOSIS OF COPD. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 207-211 (2019).

I. Introduction

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is one of the most common disease related to lung function. COPD can be defined as chronic inflammatory disease affects human lung and prevent complete airflow. Leading to partially irreversible airway obstruction which makes limitation and difficulty to perform ideal emptying air of the lung. COPD is linked to other different clinical complications including increase the risk of heart diseases and lung cancer. Mainly, Emphysema and chronic bronchitis are the two main conditions influencing COPD developing. Chronic bronchitis is inflammation

of the bronchial tubes, which carry air to and from the air sacs (alveoli) of the lungs. While emphysema leading to destroy alveoli at the end of bronchioles. Unfortunately, COPD symptoms don't appear until significant damages of lungs have occurred. Particularly, symptoms including wide variety of clinical indications such as; shortness of breath, wheezing, chest tightness, chronic cough and mucus. The World Health Organization (WHO) declared that the main cause of COPD in developing countries is smoking. While exposed to fumes from burning fuel in industrial countries is the main reason for COPD. In addition to that, research

studies showed that COPD can affect not only adult, but also infants and children. Around 1% of COPD cases resulted from genetic disorders associated with low level of certain type of protein known as alpha-1-antitrypsin. Moreover, other factors play a significant role in to influence COPD. Smoker people with asthma usually are at higher risk to develop COPD, as well as, workers who exposed to dust and chemical compounds for long time regarding to their occupational job are considered at high risk to irritate and inflame their lungs. Also, aging factor contribute to develop COPD slowly over years [1].

Consequently, patients with COPD are suffering from different types of clinical complications. COPD patients are associated to develop respiratory infections more likely than normal people. Leading to make treatment of infection much harder and difficult. Therefore, it is recommended to take annual vaccination of flu. On other hand, the risk of cardiac problems and lung cancer may increase with the presence of COPD. Also, pulmonary hypertension may occur regarding that COPD increase blood pressure in lung arteries. Furthermore, difficulty in breathing and dealing with chronic pain among COPD patients leading to prevent doing physical and social activities and may affect patient life negatively. Therefore, COPD is associated in some cases to hopelessness and depression.

Hopefully, most patients with COPD can achieve excellent

symptom control and good quality of life by proper management and medication [2].

II. Methodology

Diagnosis of COPD based on full review of medical history and symptoms combined with medical instrumentation of pulmonary function test by spirometer. Lung function tests are used to diagnose COPD based on measurement of the amount of air during inhalation and exhalation. Spirometer measures the amount of air that can be hold in lungs during respiration process. The patient will be asked to blow fast and completely into a specific tube connected to sensor. The resulted measurement of spirometer detects the volume of exhausted air in one second and the total amount of exhale air in one forced breath. After that the resulted measurement are compared to standard chart according to patient age. Beside that, chest X-ray image can be useful to diagnose infections or lung cancer. Also, blood tests can be performed to determine any other clinical conditions that may produce similar symptoms of COPD.

II. Discussion

Spirometry technique is the most common diagnosis tool for COPD as shown in figure 1. Spirometer measurements cover all pulmonary function tests including the following:

FEV which is the forced expiration volume per one-time unit (one second).

FVC, the forced vital capacity of lung that represents the maximum

amount of exhaled air blown out as fast as possible.

VC, the vital capacity which is related to the maximum volume of air that can be blown out as fast as possible.

PEF represents the maximum flow of exhaled air when blown out at steady rate.

IVC, inspiratory vital capacitance represents the maximum volume of air that can be inhaled after full expiration.



Figure 1: Spirometer for Lung Function Tests

Electronic spirometer shown in figure 1 measure the speed of air flow by ultrasonic transducer, the device consists of tube and oblique channel. cross sectional figure 2 shows the two ultrasonic sensors inside the tube mounted in opposite direction. Ultrasonic pulses with short intervals generated by patient breath and measure directly by the two ultrasonic transducers as emitted and receiving pulses in both directions.

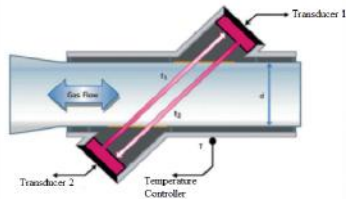


Figure 2: Cross-sectional View of Ultrasonic Transducers

Consequently, the obtained measurement of lung function is compared to reference values. Usually, the reference values which will be used to diagnose COPD are obtained via researches studies by one of the following: National Health and Nutrition Assessment Survey (NHANES III), European Community of Steel and Coal (ECSC), and Global Lung Initiative (GLI). However, these reference values are categorized according to height, weight, age, sex, ethnic origin, smoking habits, environment, working conditions and physical fitness. The below figure shows a resulted graph of spirometer for normal and abnormal patient [1].

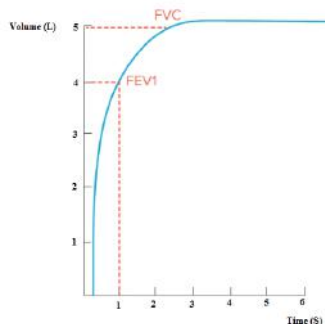
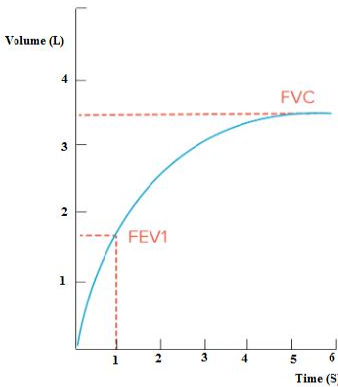


Figure 3: a- Spirometer graph for Healthy Patient



b- Spirometer graph for Non-Healthy Patient

Figure 3: a- Spirometer graph for Healthy Patient b- Spirometer graph for Non-Healthy Patient

In addition to that, FEV measurement is used to predict normality of lung functions. The ratio of 80% or higher represents healthy patients. While the ratio between (50%-79%) predicts moderate conditions. As well as, ratio below 30% predicts sever conditions as shown in below table [2].

FEV %	Prediction
≥ 80	Healthy
70-79	Mild
50-69	Moderate
30-49	Sever
≤ 30	Very Sever

Table 1: Prediction of COPD according to Forced Expiratory Volume (FEV1) %

Pulmonary obstruction is characterized by limitation in air flow resulted from poor muscle contraction, inflammation, mucus or airway collapse. Regarding spirometer measurements there will be decrease in FEV, VC, FVC and FEV/FVC ratio [3].

In addition to that, restriction of lung is described as loos in lung volume due to pulmonary fibrosis, oedema, obesity and chest wall disorder known as kyphoscoliosis. It characterized by decreasing in FVC value and high ratio of FEV/FVC. Besides that, mixed conditions based on spirometer measurement may be resulted when patients are heavy smokers and have fibrotic disease. Making it harder to interpret the measurements of spirometer. Therefore, further lung tests are recommended to obtain the correct diagnosis.

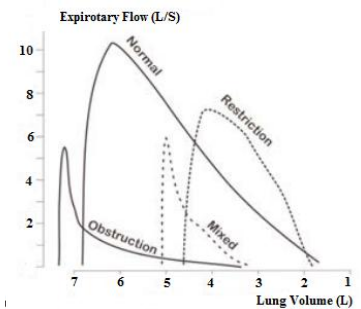
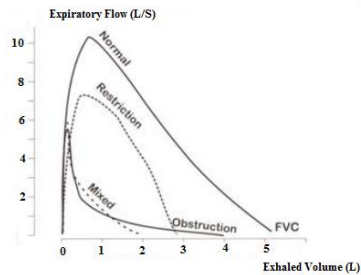


Figure 4: Spirometer graph for Healthy, Restriction, Obstruction and Mixed pattern of COPD [4].

The above figure illustrates four examples of resulted graph by spirometer, showing four possible diagnosis based on spirometer measurements.

IV. Conclusion

Spirometer is a significant tool to perform measurement of lung function tests. Promoting the

detection of early symptoms or indications for COPD. The correct utilization of spirometer leads to correct diagnosis and improve treatment options. In addition to that, early diagnosis is a key point for ideal management of COPD.

References

- 1- GOLD, 2015. Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD). Pocket Guide to COPD Diagnosis, Management, and Prevention, pp.5-10. Available at: <http://www.goldcopd.org/guidelines-pocket-guide-to-copd-diagnosis.html>.
- 2- Kunik, M., Veazey, C., Cully, J., Soucek, J., Graham, D., Hopko, D. Stanley, M. (2008). COPD education and cognitive behavioral therapy group treatment for clinically significant symptoms of depression and anxiety in COPD patients: A randomized controlled trial. *Psychological Medicine*, 38(3), 385-396. doi:10.1017/S0033291707001687
- 3- Quanjer PH. Standardization of lung function tests. Report of working party. *Bull Eur Physiopathol Respir* 1983; 19: 1-95.
- 4- Pellegrino R, Viegi G, Brusasco V, et al. Interpretative strategies for lung function tests. *Eur Respir J* 2005; 26: 948-968.
- 5- National Clinical Guideline Centre. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in adults in primary and secondary care. <http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG101/Guidance/pdf/English>.
- 6- Cooper BG. Letter: Spirometry standards and FEV1/FVC repeatability. *Primary Care Respiratory Journal* (2010); 19(3): 292-294

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

THE FUNCTIONAL-SEMANTIC AND TRANSLATING PECULIARITIES OF "AS SOON AS" INCHOATIVE PHASEME

Ilkhom Juraev

Jizzakh State Pedagogical Institute, Uzbekistan.



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-21>

Abstract: This article considers "as soon as" from the point of traditional and functional grammar. It overviews some aspects of conjunction in the complex sentence. Here is offered several methods of research study. "As soon as" characterized as an independent means of inchoative phase, and additional means to express inter-layer, inter-categorical, and inter-micro field means.

Key words: Phase, "phaseme", inchoative, durative, terminative, functional-semantic, translating, starting, onomasiological, semasiological, operator, verbalizer, expressor, polypredicative, inter-category, inter-layer, inter-micro field.

Recommended citation: Ilkhom Juraev. THE FUNCTIONAL-SEMANTIC AND TRANSLATING PECULIARITIES OF "AS SOON AS" INCHOATIVE PHASEME. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 212-215 (2019).

INTRODUCTION

At the beginning of the analysis of the inchoative phaseme, it should be noted that, as the first task of the English language study, we define the inchoative phaseme as language phenomena, and then explore ways of translating them into Uzbek from the point of view of translation practice. At the same time, we focus our attention on the actualization of identified English phasemes withinchoative semantic into the Uzbek language and transformation in translation.

METHODOLOGY

In the course of the research, we

use onomasiological and semasiological methods that are the most commonly and widely applied in the functional grammar, functional-semantic and grammar-lexical theories (fields). Thus, according to V.G. Gak, the semasiological and onomasiological approaches allow, without breaking the integrity of the analysis, to change the starting point and initial orientation of the research, (Gak, 2001). Also, analytical, transformation, substitution, and component analysis methods are also systematically involved.

MAIN PART

As soon as the light in the bedroom went out there was a stirring and a fluttering all through the farm buildings (George Orwell, 1945). As soon as is the lexical-grammatical phaseme (operator, verbalizer, significator, expressor), that means "fact" (in a broad and general meaning is any act, action, process, event, situation, detail, etc.), which inchoative phase in syntax construction (complex sentence) actualized by concerning to main sentence (clause). As soon as phaseme is an adverbial modifier of time subordinate clause conjunction of the complex sentence, which means instantaneous continuity between the final phase of the fact and the starting phase of the another fact. In this regard, it serves to actualize the second fact continuity (linear) starting phase in the poly-predicative construction. It is important to remember that in such statements, as soon as the lexical-grammatical phaseme will be actualized to emphasize the second, otherwise the main clause fact starting phase.

One of the options for translating this English phrase into Uzbek can be as follows: Ётоқхонада чироқ ўчиши билан, ферманинг барча бинолари бўйлаб кўзғалиш ва таҳлика (бесаранжомлик) бошланди (-As soon as the light in the bedroom went out there was a stirring and fluttering all through the farm buildings). In this translation, in the translation into Uzbek has also been retained the syntactic pattern

(i.e., syntactic equivalence) - adverbial modifier of time subordinate clause has been expressed by identical construction. So that, the English language as soon as starting phaseme is translated into Uzbek with "билан" lexeme (lexical options, биланоқ, заҳоти(-ёқ), он(-да), тоб(-да) and etc.). In the translation into the Uzbek language, the adverbial modifier of time subordinate clause auxiliary "билан" serves to highlight, assert and emphasize the expressed starting phase of the fact in the main clause. So, it would be appropriate to append the Uzbek language "билан" and its synonymic lexemes with the same meaning, in the line of starting phasemes and specifiers.

In traditional grammar "as soon as" fulfils the role of a linker (conjunction) that connect subordinate clause of time with a main clause. For example: I shall start verbalize my statement, as soon as you finish to verbiage. As soon as the material is ready, I will publish them. I fulfilled my task, as soon as you had carried out yours. In functional grammar, temporal (the time - the past and future tenses' operators) and taxis (the order - differentiated semantics verbalizer) are considered as a means of expression. It is worth to mention that from the point of view of functional-semantic field, just one means (operator, verbalizer, etc.) can serve as a means for multiple fields (macro-categories). The analyzed "as soon as" can serve as a good example to adduce the

hypothesis. This syntax-semantics also serve as the phase, the tense, and the taxis categories' verbalizer. It can only be determined by the speaker's or writer's speech intention which category it exactly actualizes in the expression. In the case of such a multitask feature, this unit receives a status of universal inter-category operator. It has also been revealed during the analysis that as an inter-category or just a category verbalizer, or within the same category can serve as an inter-layer (inter-paradigm, inter-micro field) means. Just as a single means (verbalizer, operator) can act as the primary means of the category it belongs to, and a specifier of this primary means as well. "As soon as" phaseme occupies the periphery of phase field. Although as an independent tool, it expresses starting meaning, "as soon as" (Uzbek equivalent: за?оти, билано?) basically serves to express instantaneous action of the phase category. For example: As soon as you continue to write, I shall be able to dream on. We also define the relationship between the English language continuous tense with its verb form and functional semantics durative paradigm. Otherwise, in the English language after the conjunction "as soon as" the present, the past or present perfect tense verb forms may follow. So, from the point of view of functional grammar, one must not focus attention on the verb in the form of the continuous tense, but it should concentrate on the verbal and non-verbal additional

means that support and assist to express inchoative, durative, and terminative phases of the phase category.

It should be noted that "as soon as" and "билан" and other synonymic lexemes within this category, for instance, through the means of English "start" and Uzbek "бошланмо?" verbs expressed as the central phasemes, specifier, can be evaluated as an emphaseme. As it is commonly found in many functional-semantic fields, the verb is often detected in the centre of a field and micro-fields. This is also can be overlooked in the Phase FSF (functional-semantic field) (specifically, in the English and German languages). According to widespread opinion, the morphological means (category) always occupies close-nucleus or nucleus position of the field (it functions as a dominant) (Bondarko, 1987). Consequently, the intense focus on verbal phasemes will be made in the research.

CONCLUSION

So, we analyzed and defined (parsed) different roles of "as soon as" from the point of traditional grammar and functional grammar. Traditional grammar applies the conjunction "as soon as" to connect the adverbial modifier of time (subordinate clause) with the main clause. As to functional grammar, proceeding from the onomasiological and semasiological approaches (methodology) in the study, it can be referred to as the operators of the Category of Phase.

To recapitulate, "as soon as" retains its feature (function) to link clauses, and (from the functional-semantic standpoint) it presupposes instantaneous action (fact, event, etc.) in the statement. "As soon as" may be regarded as an

independent inchoative phaseme, and it may function as an additional means to actualize (verbalize, represent, etc.) instantaneous fact. The research adduced that "as soon as" is localized in the periphery of the Phase FSF.

REFERENCES:

1. Бондарко А.В. Теория функциональной грамматики: Введение. Аспектуальность. Временная локализованность. Таксис. - Л.: Наука, 1987. - 348с.
2. Гак В.Г. Словарь В.И. Даля в свете типологии словарей. Вопросы языкознания, 2001, №3, - С. 2.
3. George Orwell, Animal farm, A fairy story. Signet Classics, UK, 1945.-P. 144.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

PLACE OF PHYSICAL CULTURE IN THE COMBAT TRAINING OF PERSONNEL

Abduazimov Sabirjon,

The Academy of Armed Forces of the Republic of Uzbekistan
Teacher, Colonel Tashkent, Uzbekistan



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-22>

Abstract: In this article some aspects of the physical culture role and place in the combat training of personnel are considered. It is very important because the professional, modern mobile army according with modern requirements is forming now. Military personnel in this case must be not only professional but clever, physically developed, mobile, having experience in modern weapon, tactics and strategy of fighting.

Key words: physical culture, health, valeology, sanology, sanogenesis, military personnel, army, military reforms, mobility, professional army, combat training.

Recommended citation: Abduazimov Sabirjon. PLACE OF PHYSICAL CULTURE IN THE COMBAT TRAINING OF PERSONNEL. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 216-219 (2019).

Formation of a professional army in our country and its modernization based on modern requirements are one of the most important tasks of the military reforms, which are being implemented gradually. President of the Republic of Uzbekistan, Supreme Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces of Uzbekistan Islam Karimov on the occasion of the 24th anniversary of the Armed Forces of the Republic of Uzbekistan as a festive greeting to the Defenders of the Motherland as one of the tasks of the National Defense Army: "The gradual provision of the national army with modern weapons and technology, its combat composition

and changes in structure, taking into account the changing nature of armed conflicts, the structure of specialties, methodology and technology of teaching military science and a list of training programs are constantly being updated, they clarified the desirable noted that increasing the combat readiness of the personnel of the usual sights.

At the same time, it is one of the important factors to ensure the combat readiness of the personnel, and to increase their physical training. Indeed, Amir Temur's creative approach to the organization of the army, the structure of its personnel, and the

methods of military art use. Indeed, it is proved that Sahibkiran's strategy and tactics are both harsh and aggressive, and that he is a martial art expert. Physical training, exercise, and exercises have served to increase combat and psychological training of the military. It is also desirable to mention the teachings of Abu Ali Ibn Sino (Avicenna). Basic physical exercises were "small and large, very strong or weak, fast, calm, or slow". Ibn Sino's scientific significance today is that he has been physically involved in physical exercises such as pulling rope, hand fighting, bullet shooting, fast walking, spear fishing, fencing, horseback riding, swinging, swinging, boat rafting, rock climbing and so on.

If we go from one scientific point of view to the approach, it is desirable to learn valeology - as a science of individual health in increasing the combat readiness of the personality. Consequently, valeology is an integrative science, based on the theory of physical education, psychology, medicine, anatomy, genetics and ecology. In the late 60s of the XXth century, Russian scientists S.M. Pavlenko and S.F. Oleynik laid the foundations for the scientific direction called "sanology". Sanology is defined as "the general doctrine of the organism against disease". The basis of this contradiction lies in the dynamic complex of adaptive mechanisms that arise under the influence of a "sanogenesis", i.e. an emergency actuator. Military medicine specialists

engaged in emergency medical emergencies (divers, cosmonauts) have made a significant contribution to the development of sanogenesis. As a result of research in this field, I.I. Brechman, who worked in Vladivostok in 1987, wrote in his monograph, "Valeology - The Introduction to Health Science", valeology health science is not limited to single medicine [2].

Indeed, human health can be found in three main sections: its structure - functional health, physical health and psycho-emotional-spiritual health. From this point of view, valeology is a science about individual health improvement and learns the individual's activities, including physical education. If we look into the matter more deeply, the remarks made at the regular meeting of the Board of Trustees of the Children's Sports Development Fund at the Oqsaroy (Uzbekistan's Presidential residence) held on February 11, 2016, under the chairmanship of President Islam Karimov, are remarkable: "Another important outcome of our work is that the young men from 63.4 per cent in 2000 to 86.3 per cent in 2015, whose height increased by 5.9 centimeters in the same period, reaching an average of 171.7 cm, and weight increased by 6.2 kilograms to 67.8 kilograms rummy" [3]. Therefore, the involvement of young people in sports in this regard, undoubtedly, involves the popularization of sports on the basis of valeology, raising the combat

readiness of the human body in a general or separate dynamic assessment, its category of quality and self-understanding.

Therefore, training of physical culture in the Samarkand Higher Military Command School of Engineering, training of cadres on the chosen profession, attraction to physical training and sports, training of physically strong young men in the defense of independent Motherland, preparation of strong athletes for various military competitions, special attention is paid to the development of professionals who can promote physical education and sport in their future career. is being called. In order to provide the physical and psychological training of their personnel, to educate physically and spiritually healthy professionals, to promote national sports, to prevent various diseases through physical training, to teach self-control in sports, one of the main objectives is to encourage regular engagement, and to master perfect areas.

It is noteworthy that the following factors play a crucial role in the emphasis on physical education in raising their combat readiness, taking into account the above circumstances:

1. **Mastership (fast).** A variety of situations and acceleration in any situation is a key factor in increasing the combat readiness of the individual team. The basis of this is the quick tactics and timely fulfillment of individual tasks.

2. **Professional.** In fact, the epilogue of personality is formed on

the basis of the speed of the spirit, not the rush of the spirit of the battlefield. In other words, the alternative option is based on the most appropriate (optimally) decision that will enable you to achieve the goal of completing and completing a variety of complex tasks with a small number of personnel, with the use of professional skills.

3. **Relativity.** Stage-by-stage implementation of various complex, tactical tasks will lead to a clear strategic goal. That is, the will of the individual content becomes a key factor in its consistent, targeted and effective management.

4. **Mobility.** In doing so, mobility plays an important role in increasing the combat readiness of the personnel through the management of specialized military units and military equipment.

5. **Battle-shay.** Of course, courage is one of the traits of the military. It is a fact that courage does not require proof at the military level, which provides a high level of combat on the battlefield and does a great job of improving the combat readiness of its personnel.

6. **Patriotism.** In fact, though the foundations of the above five factors are examples of patriotism, it is natural that military situations or situations in the battlefield can not be overlooked. "Patriotism is a social, moral and ethical attribute that expresses its relationship with its native land, its place of residence, the land, the land, and the country" [4]. Indeed, the dedication of the intellectual capacity in the personal

composition is the main feature of patriotism.

As a result, physical training classes are mainly the case with practical exercises. This includes enhancing the knowledge of cadets and enhancing the combat readiness - mastership (M1), expressing courage in defending and timely assault on competitors, endurance, self-sacrifice, professionalism (P1), relativity (R), training in mobility (M2), courage - battle-shay (B) and the patriotism (P2) as a patronage of intellectual potential, which serves to ensure the combat readiness of the personal composition of the Physical Culture = M1 + P1 + R + M2 + B + P2 in physical training. In this regard, athletics, gymnastics, handicrafts, other sports, competitions, various physical exercise exercises and sports games are essential in increasing the combat readiness of the cadets. In particular, the national struggle, the Eastern Individual struggle has been a symbol of courage, honesty, friendship and peace for centuries.

In this regard, sport, such as national wrestling, eastern wrestling and hand-to-hand combat, helps to improve the physical fitness of the individual team.

It is noteworthy that this system is currently being used to counteract the growing threats such as international terrorism, extremism and radicalism, with a variety of contradictions, contradictions, conflicts and bloodshed in the world. Therefore, military, medical education, as well as the study of valeology as one of the military issues, not only increase the combat readiness of the personality, but also lead to the introduction of new methods and techniques for the further improvement of physical education in the development of their spirituality. As a result, today, young people have the ability to perceive the diverse ideas and destructive ideologies that contradict the rich spiritual values, culture and traditions of our people, make comparative analysis and form immunity to not being deceived.

References:

1. Karimov I. Greetings to Defenders of the Motherland on the occasion of the 24th Anniversary of the establishment of the Armed Forces of the Republic of Uzbekistan. // Publication of the newspaper "Xalq so'zi", January 14, 2016, №9.
2. Basics of Valeology. -Tashkent, TDIU, 2007, Pages 16-17.
3. Karimov I. A Healthy nation, a healthy nation, will be able to do great things. // Publication of the newspaper "Xalq so'zi", February 12, 2016, №30.
4. Independence explanatory scientifically-popular dictionary. -Tashkent: "Sharq" publishing, 1998, Page 34.
5. Nick Caddick, Brett Smith. The impact of sport and physical activity on the well-being of combat veterans: A systematic review. // Psychology of Sport and Exercise. - Volume 15, Issue 1, January 2014, Pages 9-18.
6. Suzanne Peacock, David Carless, Jim McKenna Inclusive adapted sport and adventure training programme in the PTSD recovery of military personnel: A creative non-fiction. / Psychology of Sport and Exercise. - Volume 35, March 2018, Pages 151-159.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

**THE ROMANTIC POEM OF A.S. PUSHKIN
"BAKHCHYSARAY FOUNTAIN" IN THE UZBEK
LANGUAGE**

Kenjaev A.L.,

Samarkand State Institute of Foreign Languages



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-23>

Abstract: This article briefly considers the translation into Uzbek language the romantic poem of A.S. Pushkin "Bakhchysaray fountain" translated by Uzbek poet Usman Nasyr. In the content is given a literal and translation analyses of the romantic poem from the Russian language into the Uzbek languages

Key words: romantic poem, original, translation, rhythm, recreation, intonation, poetic, line, rhyme.

Recommended citation: Kenjaev A.L. THE ROMANTIC POEM OF A.S. PUSHKIN "BAKHCHYSARAY FOUNTAIN" IN THE UZBEK LANGUAGE. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 220-222 (2019).

This oriental poem was written by A.S. Pushkin in the time of his East exile in 1821-1823yy. The palace external decoration and legends of Crimean khans inspired the poet on creation of the work.

By the Event devoted to the hundred years of A.S. Pushkin death, in Uzbekistan A.S. Pushkin's works were translated by talented Uzbek poets and writers, and as a result were created the collection of 4 volumes published in the Uzbek language in 1937.

We may assert with confidence that the poem "Bakhchysaray fountain" which was translated by Uzbek translator Usman Nasyr became a belles-lettres heritage of the Uzbek people.

The translations of A.S. Pushkin's works widely considered in different conferences, but the translation of "Bakhchysaray fountain" was highly estimated and discussed in mass media of that time. Exactly, in that time, the newspaper "The Red Uzbekistan" published an article "Pushkin in the Uzbek language" where was written: "Besides the translations into the Uzbek language the work "Bakhchysaray fountain" took a special place. The translator Usman Nasyr retained not only the plot and the gist, but also the literal characteristics of this work..."

In the treatise of the academician Naim Karimov "Pushkin in the Uzbek poetry" published in 1988 the

following words can be read: It is necessary to remind that the work "Bakhchysaray fountain" was translated by twenty-four years old young poet with outstanding proficiency and as a fact in 1937 was published the translation of the book in twenty-five thousand copies. In that time, and even these days it was a measurable number of printed copies. If it did not take in consideration that Pushkin's short stories was published in thirty thousand copies, "The captain's daughter" narrative story in fifteen thousand copies, "Eugene Onega" romance in ten thousand copies, "Selected lyrics" was published in five thousand copies, we could be a witness of that the work "Bakhchysaray fountain" was spread in an extremely huge amount besides people of that time.

Even the translator Usman Nasyr felt that the translation of "Bakhchysaray fountain" took the important place in his creativity. He studied thoroughly the work history creation and literal characteristics, the time and the period represented in the work, the relation between the historical and fiction images. The poet in the passage titled "The treasure of literal art" wrote: "I was acknowledged directly with the creativity of the Russian poet A.S. Pushkin a long time before I had translated the work "Bakhchysaray fountain" and had some sense of the poetry spirit of the poet less or more.

Before to start the translation of the poem "Bakhchysaray fountain" I had studied the history of creation,

and deeply researched the work literal-form characteristics. I was astonished by the bright flight of the mastery fantasy, and I was amazed by the colours of the colourful images."

As the translations of Usman Nasyr was highly estimated in thirties of the twentieth century and nowadays, so it is required to mention about the success and adequity of these translations.

The original version consists of five hundred seventy-nine lines, the method of rhythm: a-b, a-b.

*Гирей сидел, потупя взор, а
Янтарь в устах его дымился; б
Безмолвно раболопный двор, а
Вкруг хана грозного теснился. б*

In the translation of Usman Nasyr the poem consists of six hundred sixty-five lines. The translator used in translation nine-syllabic line by other words "бармак вазни" (4+5):

*Қовоқ солиб / ўтирар Гарой 4+5 а
Лабларида / Қаҳрабо чилим 4+5 б
Даҳшатли хон / атрофида жим 4+5 б
Бош эгиб тек / турарди сарой 4+5 а*

With a few traits, Pushkin gave a well-defined artistic characterization of the hero: "everyone read the signs of anger and sadness," "on a gloomy face," "sovereign proud," "with an impatient hand."

The poet-translator Usman Nasyr managed to preserve in translation these qualities of the portrait of the hero:

*Ҳамма хоннинг хафа юзидан
Пайқар эди мубғам нишона.
...Аммо мағрур соҳиби фармон,
Қўлларини бир силтаб солди...*

The author of the poem, unevenly dividing it into separate stanzas, thereby highlights the most important transitions from one thought to another. Usman Nasyr also maintains such a division into stanzas, however, in some places he deviates from this rule in order to preserve poetic harmony. For the same reason, the translator adds, as necessary, in separate stanzas a few lines to complete the poetic thought. For example:

*Один в своих чертогах он;
Свободней грудь его вздыхает.
Живее строгое чело*

*Волнение сердца выражает.
Так бурны тучи отражает
Залива зыбкое стекло.*

This six-line stanza Usman Nasyr translates in seven lines, but in Uzbek this change remains unnoticed because, in translation, this stanza, like the original, vividly metaphorically conveys the emotional state of the hero:

*Қўшқлар аро бир ўзи қолди;
Эркин нафас олди сийнаси,
Тўлқинланиб, билмай сукутни
Уйнаб турган кўрфаз ойнаси
Акс этгандай қора булутни
Унинг жиддий манглайи аён*

while translating "Bakhchysaray fountain", Osman Nasyr liked Pushkin's artistic world. From the above-mentioned examples and comparative texts, it is known that Osman Nasyr managed to rebuild Pushkin's thoughts and feelings, artistic ideas, and original tones in translation.

References:

1. Pushkin A.S. A full collection of works. -M.: "Pravda" publisher, 1954. 3 volume, p.198.
2. Pushkin A.S. The selected works. 1 volume. -T.: Uzdavr publisher, 1949, p.287.
3. Shariпов J. Some aspects of poetical translation from the Russian language into the Uzbek language. - Tashkent. AS UzRSU publisher, 1958, p.148.
4. Salomov G. The basis of the translation theory. Tashkent - "Ukituvchi" - 1983.
5. Karimov N. Pushkin and Uzbek poetry. Tashkent, "Fan" publisher, 1988.
6. Kholbekov M.N. The traditions of the world translatology. - Tashkent, Navruz publisher, 2016.

SOCIAL SCIENCE AND HUMANITIES

Manuscript info:

Received February 17, 2018., Accepted March 15, 2018., Published April 20, 2019.

CONTRIBUTION OF CHEMICAL ENGINEERING IN THE HEALTHCARE FIELD

Eng. Manal A. Alsharaya
Royal Medical Services - Amman, Jordan



<http://dx.doi.org/10.26739/2573-5616-2019-2-24>

Abstract: Recently, chemical engineering has presented an active contribution in the various fields of medicine. Where the community of chemical engineers participated in the development of the use of biocompatible materials, which had a significant impact on the renaissance of modern medicine.

Key words: Medicine, Chemical Engineering.

Recommended citation: Manal A. Alsharaya. CONTRIBUTION OF CHEMICAL ENGINEERING IN THE HEALTHCARE FIELD. 3-4. American Journal of Research P. 223-226 (2019).

1. INTRODUCTION

Medicine has developed melodramatically in recent times, where evolution has been in every possible field. Usually, doctors, nurses as well as pharmacists are highlighted with the exception of chemical engineers, who, of course, are not present in hospitals despite their participation in such achievements [1, 2]. However, chemical engineers have adopted many improvements to life in general and to the medical sector in particular. This is evidenced by their help in the diagnosis treatment of some diseases as well as the development of pharmaceutical

industries that reduce the pain of patients [3].

2. STUDY MOTIVATION

This section is organized in two major parts. The first part is describing the biocompatible materials which play a significant role of chemical engineering in in medicine in general and novel devices in particular. The second part addresses the details of the contribution of the chemical engineer in calibrating instruments in medical laboratories.

2.1 CONTRIBUTION IN BIOCOMPATIBLE MATERIALS

Modern medical devices as well

as prostheses (artificial limbs) consist of more than one substance so it is not fair to talk about the term "biocompatible materials" for just one substance. The process of developing these materials is not an easy process at all, since these substances must be non-toxic as they are present within the human body [4]. These materials should also be unbreakable and last for a long time.

Finding such materials is difficult, but the most difficult task for chemical engineers is to convert these materials into devices that can be attached to the patient or implanted in the patient's body. However, using these biocompatible materials, the pharmaceutical industry can give a great opportunity to heal many diseases. Not only this, using these substances, specific additives can be implemented in the medical field such as:

I. Utilize of vascular transplantation in order to heal and support deteriorated arteries and veins.

II. Invention of cardiovascular implant equipments.

III. Utilize of stents to support arterial tissue.

IV. Invention of many artificial organs such as knees and hips [5].

The aforementioned points gave a second chance for patients who were legless to walk again. In addition, these biocompatible materials have given patients who used to go for renal dialysis two or three times weekly, each time stay for at least four hours to finally rest and enjoy life. In fact, chemical

engineers help patients to live better and healthier lives [6].

2.2 CONTRIBUTION IN MEDICAL LABS

Chemical engineers can contribute to many tasks related to medical laboratories such as projects involve tissue culture or characterization of biological systems. Having considered the aforementioned tasks of a chemical engineer, then, it is important to clarify that a chemical engineer can also contribute to the development of analytical instruments. An equally significant aspect to tasks assigned to the chemical engineer which is the leadership of chemical analysis laboratory. Indeed, chemical analysis laboratories are defined as labs that transact with the placement of narcotics, blood analysis such as lipid profile.

Chemical engineers keep playing a key role in the design and improvement of complicated, innovative equipments to heal human ailments. In fact, there are a lot of the restrictions actually being classified in this potential area comprise the invention of very small equipments utilized to reinforce medical prognosis and therapy. The task of chemical engineers in the perception of the contents in protein structure has been addressed in different novel publications [7-10].

The chemical engineer plays a potential approach in the calibration process of any lab device inside a hospital. In particular, the role is focused on estimating and setting the

precision and accuracy of measurement equipment. Thus, perfect calibration of equipment permits technicians to obtain a safer working environment and generate adequate data for future reference [11].

There are some basic steps for performing the calibration of an instrument by a chemical engineer such as choosing reference principles with recognized values in order to comprise the range of interest. Besides, measurements on the reference principles with the equipment to be calibrated. In addition, finding a functional relevance among the measured and known values of the reference principles (normally a least-squares fit to the data) called a calibration curve. In the end, making correction for all measurements by the inverse of the calibration curve that made in the previous step [12].

Evidence for in support of this position can be found in the frequent task of a chemical engineer to perform calibration for the instruments. Instruments need to be calibrated before any measurements that need extremely precise data. Moreover, when utilizing equipment for a long time due to the change of measurements conditions. Calibration is

recommended after any sudden and unexpected action happened to the instrument such as hitting the instrument by mistaken or falling down. Not only this, when the measurements of an instrument are questionable [13]. In the end, each equipment will require to be calibrated sporadically to ensure it could perform completely and safely. Manufacturers will elucidate how frequent the equipment will require to be calibrated. Chemical engineers always adopt the idea that there are a lot of chemicals and substances existed in medical laboratories that need as accurate as possible of measurements in order to equip the medical team a safer working situation.

3. CONCLUSIONS

Chemical engineers have provided a great medical service by introducing these materials to the medical field. Which execute, supplements, or replaces a natural task. Besides, biocompatible materials may be derived either from nature or synthesized in the laboratory utilizing several chemical approaches. It is important however to emphasize the contribution of chemical engineers in many fields of healthcare especially in laboratories. Their influence in obtaining accurate and well-performed tests.

REFERENCES

1. Khademhosseini, A. and R. Langer, A decade of progress in tissue engineering. *Nature protocols*, 2016. 11(10): p. 1775.
2. Chen, X.D., Scoping biology-inspired chemical engineering. *Chinese Journal of Chemical Engineering*, 2016. 24(1): p. 1-8.

3. Sethuraman, S., U.M. Krishnan, and A. Subramanian, *Biomaterials and Nanotechnology for Tissue Engineering*. 2016: CRC Press.
4. Duncan, T.M. and J.A. Reimer, *Chemical Engineering Design and Analysis*. 2019: Cambridge University Press.
5. Chuang, K.-Y., M.-H. Wang, and Y.-S. Ho, High-impact papers published in journals listed in the field of chemical engineering. *Malaysian Journal of Library & Information Science*, 2017. 18(2): p. 47-63.
6. Seeberger, P.H. and D.B. Werz, Synthesis and medical applications of oligosaccharides. *Nature*, 2007. 446(7139): p. 1046.
7. Carol, K. Thermodynamic and kinetic origins of Alzheimer's and related diseases: A chemical engineer's perspective. in *The 2006 Annual Meeting*. 2006.
8. Vekilov, P.G., Chemical engineers and the fundamental understanding of human disease. *AIChE journal*, 2008. 54(10): p. 2508-2515.
9. Randolph, T.W. and J.F. Carpenter, Engineering challenges of protein formulations. *AIChE Journal*, 2007. 53(8): p. 1902-1907.
10. Kontogeorgis, G.M., *The role of chemical engineering in medicinal research including Alzheimer's*, in *GeNeDis 2014*. 2015, Springer. p. 57-62.
11. Mitra, S. and B. Kebbekus, *Environmental chemical analysis*. 2018: CRC Press.
12. Bakeev, K.A., *Process analytical technology: spectroscopic tools and implementation strategies for the chemical and pharmaceutical industries*. 2010: John Wiley & Sons.
13. Kamionka, M., P. Breuil, and C. Pijolat, Calibration of a multivariate gas sensing device for atmospheric pollution measurement. *Sensors and Actuators B: Chemical*, 2006. 118(1-2): p. 323-327.



ISSN 2573-5616 (print)
ISSN 2573-5624 (online)

IMPACT FACTOR: 5.069

AMERICAN JOURNAL OF RESEARCH

№ 3-4, March-April 2019

Founder and publisher Robert Hart

Published since January 2017 year. Issued Monthly.

**Editorial office: Mailing address: 8223 Lakeshore Rd., Lexington,
Michigan 48450, USA Phone: +1 348-498-3736**

Internet address: <http://www.journalofresearch.us>

E-mail: info@journalofresearch.us

Circulation 200 copies. Free of charge. IMPACT FACTOR: 5.069